

# **Regional Policy Statement For Taranaki**

Taranaki Regional Council  
Private Bag 713  
Stratford

January 2010

ISBN 978-0-473-16269-6 (Print)  
ISBN 978-0-473-16270-2 (Online)



# Taranaki Regional Council

## Regional Policy Statement for Taranaki

This Regional Policy Statement was prepared by the Taranaki Regional Council under section 60 and Schedule 1 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

The Taranaki Regional Council approved the Regional Policy Statement on 8 December 2009 and it became operative on 1 January 2010.

DATED at Stratford this 8<sup>th</sup> day of December 2009

SIGNED by the TARANAKI REGIONAL COUNCIL by the affixing of its common seal in the presence of



\_\_\_\_\_  
D N MacLeod (Chairman)



\_\_\_\_\_  
B G Chamberlain (Chief Executive)





## Preface

Under the Resource Management Act 1991, regional councils are required to have in place a regional policy statement for their regions.

This document – the *Regional Policy Statement for Taranaki 2010* – is the second Regional Policy Statement to be prepared by the Taranaki Regional Council. It is an important document because it sets out the strategic direction that the Council and the wider community will take to achieve the purpose of the Act. The Regional Policy Statement provides an overview of the resource management issues of regional significance and the policies and methods that will be adopted to address those issues. The Regional Policy Statement also sets out the strategic directions for achieving integrated management in Taranaki – not just across land, water, air and the coast – but also between the Taranaki Regional Council and the three district councils.

Much of the information in this document draws on comprehensive state of the environment monitoring programmes put in place by the Taranaki Regional Council subsequent to the adoption of the first Regional Policy Statement in 1994. Generally, environmental quality is high and has been maintained or improved over the last decade. The previous Regional Policy Statement built a solid foundation for resource management in Taranaki. This review of the Regional Policy Statement shows that the Taranaki Regional Council, the region's three territorial authorities, industry, landowners, other organisations and the community at large have implemented or are implementing the Statement.

The challenge now is to build on the success of the past, continue with our successful policies and programmes and identify opportunities to further improve environmental standards and conditions.

With that in mind, I have great pleasure in presenting the *Regional Policy Statement for Taranaki*. The Taranaki Regional Council looks forward to working with you and to continuing our efforts towards a sustainable and prosperous Taranaki.

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'D N MacLeod', with a large, stylized initial 'D'.

D N MacLeod  
Chairman  
Taranaki Regional Council



# Table of contents

Preface	
Table of contents	i
List of Tables	iii
List of Figures	iii
<b>Part A</b>	
<b>Introduction and background</b>	<b>1</b>
1. Introduction	3
1.1 Title	3
1.2 Purpose	3
1.3 Operative date and review	3
1.4 Scope and effect	3
1.5 Structure	3
2. The Taranaki region – the people, the place	5
2.1 Location	5
2.2 History	5
2.3 Landforms and soils	6
2.3.1 The volcanic ring plain	6
2.3.2 Hill country	6
2.3.3 Coastal terraces	6
2.3.4 Coastal environment	6
2.4 Rivers and streams	7
2.5 Climate	7
2.6 The Taranaki community	7
2.7 The Taranaki economy	8
2.7.1 Agriculture and forestry	8
2.7.2 Pig and poultry farming	8
2.7.3 Horticulture and cropping	8
2.7.4 Oil and gas industry	8
2.7.5 Manufacturing and construction	9
2.7.6 Tourism	9
2.7.7 Infrastructure	9
2.7.8 Aggregate Extraction	9
3. Statutory and planning framework	11
3.1 Integrated management	11
3.2 The Resource Management Act	11
3.2.1 Purpose and principles	11
3.2.2 Functions and powers	12
3.2.3 Policies, plans and other instruments	12
3.3 Other statutes	13
3.4 The Regional Policy Statement for Taranaki	15
3.4.1 Purpose and content	15
3.4.2 Methods of implementation	15
3.4.3 Effect of the Regional Policy Statement	16
3.5 Other statutory documents	16
3.5.1 Regional plans	16
3.5.2 District plans	17
3.5.3 Long-term Council Community Plan and annual plans	17
3.5.4 Other plans and strategies	17
<b>Part B</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>Resource management issues of significance</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>Statement of significant resource management issues</b>	<b>21</b>
4. Use and development of resources	23

4.1	Recognising the role of resource use and development in Taranaki	23
5.	Land and soil	25
5.1	Protecting our soil from accelerated erosion	25
5.2	Maintaining healthy soils	28
5.3	Managing the effects of hazardous substances and contaminated sites	30
6.	Fresh water	35
6.1	Sustainable allocation of surface water resources	35
6.2	Maintaining and enhancing the quality of water in our rivers, streams, lakes, and wetlands	41
6.3	Maintaining groundwater flows and quality at sustainable levels	48
6.4	Protecting the natural character of wetlands	50
6.5	Managing land drainage and associated diversion of water	52
6.6	Managing effects associated with the use of and disturbances to river and lake beds	54
6.7	Maintaining and enhancing public access to and along rivers and lakes	57
7.	Air and climate change	61
7.1	Maintaining air quality	61
7.2	Responding to the effects of climate change	64
8.	Coastal environment	69
8.1	Protecting the natural character of our coast	69
8.2	Maintaining and enhancing coastal water quality	74
8.3	Maintaining and enhancing public access to and along the coastal environment	77
9.	Indigenous biodiversity	81
9.1	Maintaining and enhancing indigenous biodiversity	81
10.	Natural features and landscapes, historic heritage and amenity value	89
10.1	Protecting our outstanding and important natural features and landscapes	89
10.2	Protecting our historic heritage	92
10.3	Maintaining and enhancing amenity values	94
11.	Natural hazards	97
11.1	Reducing the risks to the community from natural hazards	97
12.	Waste management	103
12.1	Minimising waste and managing its disposal	103
13.	Minerals	107
13.1	Recognising and providing for appropriate use and development of minerals	107
14.	Energy	111
14.1	Sustainably managing energy	111
15.	The built environment	117
15.1	Promoting sustainable urban development	117
15.2	Providing for regionally significant infrastructure	119
<b>Part C</b>		<b>125</b>
<b>Resource management issues of significance to iwi</b>		<b>125</b>
16.	Statement of resource management issues of significance to iwi authorities	127
16.1	Taking into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi	127
16.2	Recognising kaitiakitanga	130
16.3	Recognising and providing for the relationship of Māori with ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga	131
16.4	Recognising cultural and spiritual values of tangata whenua in resource management processes	135
<b>Part D</b>		<b>141</b>
<b>Administrative procedures</b>		<b>141</b>
17.	Administrative procedures	143
17.1	Integrated management and cross boundary processes	143
17.2	Monitoring	145
17.3	Review of the Regional Policy Statement	146



Glossary of terms	149
Appendix I: River and stream catchments of high quality or high value for their natural, ecological and amenity values	159
Appendix II: High quality or high value areas of the coastal environment	169
Appendix III: Treaty of Waitangi	185
Appendix IV: Statutory acknowledgements	187
Appendix IVA: Ngati Ruanui statutory acknowledgements	189
Appendix IVB: Ngati Tama statutory acknowledgements	197
Appendix IVC: Ngaa Rauru Kiitahi statutory acknowledgements	211
Appendix IVD: Ngāti Mutunga statutory acknowledgements	221

## List of Tables

Table 1: Summary of significant resource management issues	21
Table 2: Summary of resource management issues of significance to iwi authorities	127

## List of Figures

Figure 1: The Taranaki region: location and local government boundaries	5
Figure 2: Iwi boundaries in the Taranaki region	5
Figure 3: Taranaki landforms	6
Figure 4: The main rivers and streams of Taranaki	7
Figure 5: Hierarchy of planning instruments under the Resource Management Act	13
Figure 6: Location of river and stream catchments of high quality or high value for their natural, ecological and amenity values	159
Figure 7: High quality or high value areas of the coastal environment - Epiha Reef to Pukearuhe	171
Figure 8: High quality or high value areas of the coastal environment - Whitecliffs to Airedale Reef	172
Figure 9: High quality or high value areas of the coastal environment - Airedale Reef to Waipu Lagoons	173
Figure 10: High quality or high value areas of the coastal environment - Waipu Lagoons to Ngamotu Beach	174
Figure 11: High quality or high value areas of the coastal environment - New Plymouth Foreshore to Lloyds Ponds	175
Figure 12: High quality or high value areas of the coastal environment - Lloyds Ponds to Leith/Perth Road Beaches	176
Figure 13: High quality or high value areas of the coastal environment - Leith/Perth Road Beaches to Bayly Road	177
Figure 14: High quality or high value areas of the coastal environment - Stent Road coast to Kina Road and Oaonui Beach	178
Figure 15: High quality or high value areas of the coastal environment - Kina Road and Oaonui Beach to Julian's Ponds	179
Figure 16: High quality or high value areas of the coastal environment - Julian's Ponds to Sutherland/Normanby Road Ends	180
Figure 17: High quality or high value areas of the coastal environment - Sutherland/Normanby Road Ends to Manawapou Road Coastal Lagoons	181
Figure 18: High quality or high value areas of the coastal environment - Manawapou-Tangahoe River Mouths and Cliff Tops to North and South Traps	182
Figure 19: High quality or high value areas of the coastal environment - Waipipi Dunelands to Waiinui Beach and Reef	183
Figure 20: Location of statutory acknowledgements for Ngati Ruanui	195

Figure 21 Location of statutory acknowledgements for Ngati Tama 209  
Figure 22 Location of statutory acknowledgements for Ngaa Rauru Kiiitahi 219  
Figure 23 Location of statutory acknowledgements for Ngāti Mutunga 240

## **Part A**

### **Introduction and background**



# 1. Introduction

---

## 1.1 TITLE

This document is known as the Regional Policy Statement for Taranaki.

## 1.2 PURPOSE

The *Regional Policy Statement for Taranaki* ('the Regional Policy Statement' or 'Statement') is a statement of policy for the Taranaki region (as constituted under the Local Government (Taranaki Region) Reorganisation Order 1989). Its purpose is to promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources in the Taranaki region by:

- providing an overview of the resource management issues of the Taranaki region
- identifying policies and methods to achieve integrated management of the natural and physical resources of the whole region.

## 1.3 OPERATIVE DATE AND REVIEW

This Regional Policy Statement is the second regional policy statement to be prepared by the Taranaki Regional Council and became operative on 1 January 2010. The Regional Policy Statement will be fully reviewed not later than 10 years from the date this Statement became operative. A five-year interim review will be undertaken of the results of monitoring the efficiency and effectiveness of the policies and methods in the Regional Policy Statement.

## 1.4 SCOPE AND EFFECT

The Taranaki Regional Council in accordance with section 62 of the Resource Management Act has prepared the Regional Policy Statement. As one of the requirements of the Act, the Regional Policy Statement provides an overview of the resource management issues of the region, and identifies policies and methods to achieve integrated management of the natural and physical resources of the whole region.

The Regional Policy Statement takes account of all those issues relating to resources such as land, water and air that are of importance to the region, and puts in place policies and methods to achieve integrated management of those resources. This integrated management recognises that decisions on any particular resource (e.g. land) may have effects on other resources (e.g. water) and coordinates the decisions of resource management agencies such as regional councils and local territorial authorities.

The Regional Policy Statement has an important role in setting the overall direction for the management of

natural and physical resources and the environment of Taranaki.

Although the Regional Policy Statement does not contain rules to regulate activities, the Taranaki Regional Council and the territorial authorities of the region are required **to give effect to** the Regional Policy Statement when preparing or changing regional or district plans (which may contain such rules). In addition, the Taranaki Regional Council and territorial authorities are required to “...**have regard to**” relevant policies and objectives in the Regional Policy Statement when considering an application for a resource consent (section 104(1) of the Act).

## 1.5 STRUCTURE

The Regional Policy Statement for Taranaki is divided into four parts.

**Part A** contains an **introduction** and provides **background information** on the Regional Policy Statement.

Section 1 contains an introduction to the Regional Policy Statement, including its purpose, operative date, scope and structure.

Section 2 presents an overview of Taranaki's history, environment, people and economy. This provides an important context for understanding the issues and associated objectives, policies and methods contained in this document.

Section 3 presents an overview of the Resource Management Act, other relevant legislation, and the planning framework relevant to the implementation of objectives, policies and methods in the Regional Policy Statement.

**Part B** contains the **significant resource management issues** relating to the Taranaki region. In relation to each issue, objectives, policies, methods of implementation and environmental results anticipated are identified. To assist the reader in locating all relevant policies, related policies (e.g. where an activity has effects on other resources) identified in other sections of the Regional Policy Statement are **cross-referenced**.

Section 4 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods addressing the use and development of resources.

Section 5 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods addressing land and soil – these issues

relate to soil erosion, soil health and the management of hazardous substances and contaminated sites.

Section 6 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods addressing fresh water – these issues relate to the sustainable allocation of surface water, surface water quality, groundwater quality and allocation, wetlands, drainage, the use of river and lake beds and public access to and along rivers and streams.

Section 7 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods addressing air – these issues relate to air quality and greenhouse gases.

Section 8 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods addressing the coast – these issues relate to coastal water quality, natural character and public access to and along the coast.

Section 9 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods addressing indigenous biodiversity – these address terrestrial, fresh water, and marine habitats.

Section 10 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods addressing natural features and landscapes, historic heritage and amenity values.

Section 11 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods addressing natural hazards management.

Section 12 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods addressing waste management.

Section 13 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods addressing minerals.

Section 14 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods addressing energy.

Section 15 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods addressing the built environment – these issues relate to sustainable urban development and providing for regionally significant infrastructure.

**Part C** sets out the **resource management issues of significance to iwi authorities**. Section 16.1 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods to take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi. Section 16.2 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods to recognise kaitiakitanga. Section 16.3 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods recognising and providing for the relationship of Māori with ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga. Section 16.4 contains issues, objectives, policies and methods to recognise cultural and spiritual values of tangata whenua in resource management processes.

**Part D** sets out **administrative procedures** relating to the implementation of the Regional Policy Statement. They include the processes that the Taranaki Regional Council will use to promote integrated management and deal with issues that cross local authority boundaries, and the procedures to monitor the effectiveness of the Regional Policy Statement and for reviewing the Regional Policy Statement.

To assist readers in using the Regional Policy Statement, a **glossary** has been prepared and is located at the back of this document. Additional information of relevance to the Regional Policy Statement is also contained in the Appendices.

## 2. The Taranaki region – the people, the place

### 2.1 LOCATION

The Taranaki region lies on the west coast of the North Island of New Zealand. The boundaries of the region, as prescribed by the Local Government Reorganisation Order 1989, conform to those of water catchments, extending from the Mohakatino catchment in the north to the Waitotara catchment in the south and inland to the boundary of, but not including, the Whanganui catchment. The boundary of the Taranaki region extends 12 nautical miles (approximately 22 kilometres) offshore to include the waters of the territorial sea. There are three districts within the region: the New Plymouth, Stratford and South Taranaki districts (Figure 1).

The land area of the Taranaki region comprises 723,610 ha, which is approximately 3% of New Zealand's total land area.



**Figure 1** The Taranaki region: location and local government boundaries

### 2.2 HISTORY

The human occupation of Taranaki dates back to at least 800 AD, when settlement by ancestors of the present Māori people is thought to have begun. Significant populations settled in coastal areas between Urenui and Waitara. Eight iwi are currently recognised. These are Ngāti Tama, Ngāti Mutunga, Te Atiawa, Ngāti Maru, Taranaki, Ngā Ruahine, Ngāti Ruanui and Ngāa Rauru (Figure 2).

European settlers began arriving from the early 1840s. In 1841, the New Zealand Company purchased a large block of land in what was to become New Plymouth. Settlement was initially concentrated near the coast. At



**Figure 2** Iwi boundaries in the Taranaki region

that time, much of the Taranaki landscape was covered by wetlands and native bush.

Increasing European settlement pressures led to disputes over land ownership and eventually to the 'Taranaki wars' of the 1860s. In response to Māori 'rebellion' against the Crown, the government confiscated large tracts of land under the terms of the New Zealand Settlements Act 1863.

From the 1870s, after the initial hostilities had ceased, settlement increased rapidly and began to encroach inland. Coastal areas were easily converted to grazing land by clearing the light cover of tutu, flax, toetoe and fern. Indigenous forest cover further inland was also cleared and under ideal physical and climatic conditions, dairying became the dominant land use. Surplus dairy products were initially used for local bartering but with the development of refrigerated shipping and new export markets in the 1880s, milk began to be collected from farms and processed in bulk at creameries and factories scattered throughout the region. By the end of the nineteenth century, Taranaki was developing into a highly productive agricultural province.

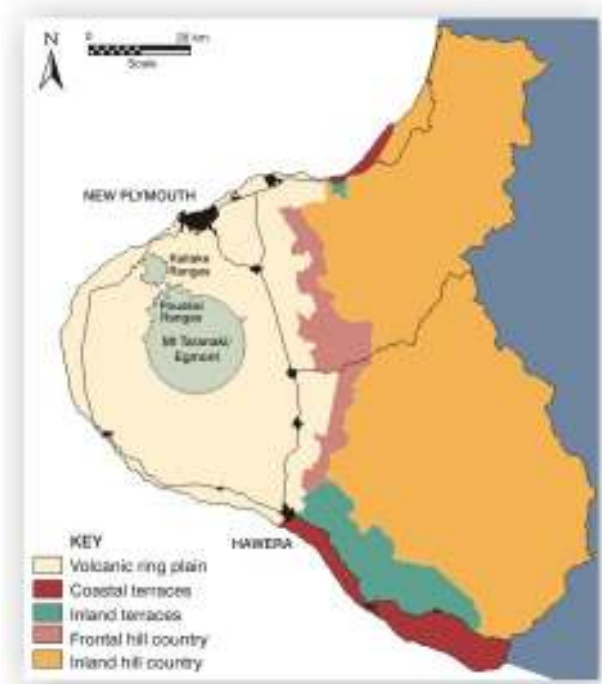
Agriculture, particularly dairying, and to a lesser extent, sheep and beef farming, was extended and intensified during the first half of the twentieth century, and continues to dominate the local economy. However, in the second half of the twentieth century, oil and gas exploration and development became increasingly important. Taranaki remains New Zealand's only

commercially producing oil and gas area and an area of continuing exploration activity.

## 2.3 LANDFORMS AND SOILS

The Taranaki region consists of four distinctive landforms (Figure 3), each of which requires a different type of environmental management:

- the volcanic landscape and ring plain centred on Mount Taranaki
- the dissected Taranaki hill country
- the coastal and inland marine terraces of north and south Taranaki
- the coastal and marine environment.



**Figure 3** Taranaki landforms

### 2.3.1 THE VOLCANIC RING PLAIN

Although Mount Taranaki dominates the landscape, it is only the most recent of a number of andesitic volcanoes that have developed in western Taranaki over the last two million years. The Pouakai and Kaitake ranges are the remnants of former volcanoes. While the Pouakai and Kaitake volcanic centres are now extinct, Mount Taranaki is still considered (in geological terms) to be active, even though it has not erupted in the last 250 years.

Over the last 50,000 years, the cone of Mount Taranaki has collapsed intermittently causing very large and mobile debris avalanches and lahars (mudflows) to sweep down the mountain. As each volcanic cone was built up by successive eruptions, natural erosion has stripped away the volcanic debris and redistributed it in a 'ring' around the volcano base creating the Taranaki ring plain.

The soils of the ring plain are mostly deep, free-draining, fertile volcanic ash soils known as yellow-brown loams.

These soils support intensive pastoral farming, particularly dairying, which is most intensive on the flatter land in south Taranaki.

### 2.3.2 HILL COUNTRY

The Taranaki hill country lies east of the ring plain. The inland terraces and frontal hill country are of strongly rolling topography and largely retain the volcanic ash soils, while the inland hill country is steeper and more deeply dissected. The underlying strata of the hill country are not volcanic but consist of older sedimentary rocks – mudstones, siltstones and sandstones known locally as papa.

The soils of the inland hill country are mostly steep land soils comprised of shallow soils that have developed on steep, relatively unstable slopes. The composition and depth of soils are extremely variable, and often erosion has prevented the development of mature soil. While the hill country is more prone to erosion, it can support both pastoral farming and commercial forestry when managed in accordance with the physical limitations of the land.

### 2.3.3 COASTAL TERRACES

Coastal terraces raised by tectonic activity extend along the north and south Taranaki coast. In the far north only a narrow strip of coastal plain is preserved, but between Waitara and Lepperton in the north and from Hawera south, the terraces extend up to 20 kilometres inland. Along the coastline, cliffs ranging from three to 60 metres in height have been formed from high energy wave action.

The volcanic deposits on the old terrace surfaces are deep and, because they are further from the volcanic centre, are fine-textured. The soils of these areas are classic volcanic loams and are among the most versatile and productive in the region.

Sand accumulation is concentrated in the coastal sand country near river mouths, particularly along the southern coastline, where dunefields extend inland for several kilometres. Only 2.1% of the Taranaki region is classified as coastal sand country. Because of their weak structure, these soils are particularly susceptible to wind erosion if the vegetation cover is disturbed.

### 2.3.4 COASTAL ENVIRONMENT

The Taranaki region is exposed to the west, and as a consequence, high energy wave and wind conditions dominate the coastal environment. There are few areas of sheltered water beyond the estuaries, such as those of the Tongaporutu, Waitara and Patea rivers, and the confines of Port Taranaki.

Almost the entire Taranaki coastline is subject to varying degrees of erosion from waves and wind. This has resulted in a predominantly cliffed coastline, with the western coast characterised by boulder cliffs and



offshore reefs derived from erosion of lahar and other volcanic material. In north and south Taranaki, erosion of marine sediments has resulted in a coastline of almost continuous papa cliffs and the famous black sand beaches.

## 2.4 RIVERS AND STREAMS

Taranaki has 217 parent catchments and 530 named rivers and streams. The three largest rivers in Taranaki are the Waitotara, Waitara and Patea rivers. Figure 4 shows the main rivers and streams in the Taranaki region.



**Figure 4** The main rivers and streams of Taranaki

Over 300 rivers and streams flow from the flanks of Mount Taranaki in a distinctive radial pattern. These streams are characterised by short narrow catchments of steep gradient. Stream channels are typically well incised into the volcanic ash and debris flow material of the ring plain. Egmont National Park acts as a huge reservoir, supplying a steady flow of water to the ring plain streams, even during prolonged dry periods.

In marked contrast to the near perfect radial drainage of the ring plain, the hill country displays a 'dendritic' pattern of drainage. The rivers of the hill country have short tributaries contained by narrow valleys. In general, these rivers carry high sediment loads as a result of hill country erosion.

Taranaki rivers and streams, particularly on the ring plain, are extensively used by the community for agriculture, industry and community water supplies and for a wide range of recreational and aesthetic purposes.

## 2.5 CLIMATE

Taranaki's climate is determined by its westerly position, its mid latitude location, and its topography. Taranaki lies in the path of weather systems moving east over the Tasman Sea. The region's climate is generally sunny, windy, with moderate temperatures, and regular rainfall throughout the year.

Rainfall varies markedly throughout the region, ranging from less than 1,400 mm in the coastal areas to in excess of 8,000 mm at the summit of Mount Taranaki. Rainfall also increases with elevation in the Taranaki hill country.

Taranaki is windy but wind strengths vary greatly because of the range in topographical features, which influence exposure.

## 2.6 THE TARANAKI COMMUNITY

Final counts from the 2006 Census show the population of Taranaki at 104,127 an increase of 1.2% from the 2001 Census. In the previous Census period (1996-2001) the population of the region decreased by 3.5%. Taranaki accounts for 2.6% of New Zealand's population<sup>1</sup>.

Population changes have varied also within the region. The most notable feature has been the continued concentration of population in the New Plymouth District, which in 2006 accounted for 66% of the region's total population. The general trend has been for a decrease in the population of smaller rural

towns, and increased concentration of population in north Taranaki. This is the result of several factors including reduced employment opportunities in rural areas and small towns through farm amalgamations, closure of dairy processing factories and reduced employment in servicing and other industries, combined with land diversification, lifestyle and retirement opportunities in north Taranaki.

Fifteen per cent of the population indicated they were of Māori descent in the last Census.

<sup>1</sup> Statistics New Zealand: 'Census of Population and Dwellings: 2006'

## 2.7 THE TARANAKI ECONOMY

A notable feature of the Taranaki region is its reliance on the region's natural and physical resources for its economic and social wellbeing. The climate and soils of the region are suited to high producing pastures, which accounts for 57% (414,000 hectares) of the region. Approximately 40% of the region (over 290,000 hectares) is in indigenous forest and shrubland – mostly within the Egmont National Park and areas of the inland hill country. Approximately 20% of the region is within the public conservation estate and set aside for nature heritage conservation. Areas such as the Egmont National Park play a significant role in the region's economy. However, farming and other land based activities continue to play a prominent role in employment.

### 2.7.1 AGRICULTURE AND FORESTRY

Around 57% of Taranaki's land area is now in pastoral farming and 1.3% is covered by planted forest. Over 16% of Taranaki's labour force is employed in agriculture, forestry and fishing compared with 8.3% nationally.

Dairying dominates farming in Taranaki, particularly on the ring plain. There are approximately 1900 dairy farms in Taranaki – 16% of all dairy farms in New Zealand – with more than 490,000 dairy cows producing approximately 12% of New Zealand's total milk solids. Milk processing is now concentrated at one site – Fonterra Whareroa Dairies Ltd, near Hawera. At peak production, this facility processes over 14 million litres of milk per day, sourced from throughout the lower North Island. Other major agricultural processing sites are based at Kapuni (Fonterra Kapuni) and Eltham (Mainland Product Limited and New Zealand Limited – Enzyme Division). In addition to direct farm income from milk production, the added value resulting from the processing of milk, whey, and cheese manufacturing is a significant contributor to employment.

Sheep and beef farming, concentrated in the hill country, have an important role in the regional economy. There are approximately 1,150 sheep and beef farms in Taranaki (including lifestyle blocks) stocking approximately 817,000 sheep and 123,000 beef cattle. The largest meat processing works are located at Eltham (Riverlands), Hawera (Silver Fern Farms Limited, Hawera) and Waitotara (Silver Fern Farms Limited, Waitotara).

Exotic forest plantations continue to expand. The region has a suitable climate, good forestry sites and a well-established roading system and port. There has been an increase in exotic forestry plantings – from 9,700 ha in 1990 to an estimated 28,000 ha in 2002 – although low log prices in more recent times have slowed down that rate of increase.

### 2.7.2 PIG AND POULTRY FARMING

There are some 21 piggeries in Taranaki and 48 poultry farms – mostly concentrated in north Taranaki.

Taranaki has a significant and growing poultry industry. Taranaki is the major poultry meat producing region in New Zealand involving all aspects of the industry from breeding and growing to production and distribution. Operations are concentrated in north Taranaki with a major processing facility at Bell Block.

### 2.7.3 HORTICULTURE AND CROPPING

Horticulture and cropping are not significant land uses in Taranaki. Taranaki is self-sufficient in most crops. The crops grown include flowers and asparagus. Maize cropping (a supplementary feed stock for dairy cattle) has expanded significantly. Small local growers produce apples, tamarillos, kiwifruit, feijoas, berryfruits, some citrus fruits, strawberries and tomatoes for the local market and export.

### 2.7.4 OIL AND GAS INDUSTRY

Taranaki is of strategic importance to New Zealand – the Taranaki basin is currently New Zealand's only hydrocarbon producing area. The Kapuni and offshore Maui fields make up the major part of New Zealand's natural gas resources. Other smaller fields produce crude oil or gas or both gas and condensate. In 2004 gas and oil production from Taranaki contributed to 23% of New Zealand's total primary energy supply. Gas contributed 160.5 PJ (20.7%), and net indigenous oil contributed 17.5 PJ (2.3%) of New Zealand's total primary energy supply of 777 PJ (source: MED Energy Data File Jan 2006). Development of the large offshore Kupe field discovered in 1986, commenced in the first half of 2007.

The oil and gas industry is a significant employer in the Taranaki region. Developments such as the Pohokura oil and gas field are driving demand for labour and services and this is expected to continue as the industry transitions through a growth phase.

Exploration interest in Taranaki remains high. Since 1997 there have been a number of significant finds – the Mangahewa field in 1997, the Maari offshore field in 1998, the Rimu onshore field in 1999, the Pohokura offshore gas field in 2000, the Kauri field onshore in 2001, and the offshore Tui, Amokura and Pateke fields were discovered in 2003 and 2004. By world standards however, Taranaki remains under explored and the fields are comparatively small.

The presence of oil and gas in the region has given rise to new industries involved in the processing, distribution, use and export of hydrocarbons. Production stations or gas treatment plants are located at Oaonui, Kapuni, Waihapa, Rimu, Kaimiro and the McKee oil and gas fields. The Pohokura production station is presently under construction. A methanol plant is located at the Waitara Valley, a UF resin plant at Waitara, an ammonia-

urea plant is located at Kapuni, and large gas-fired power stations at Stratford, New Plymouth, and Whareroa.

Port Taranaki plays an important role in the distribution network and it is of strategic importance to the importing and exporting activities for the oil and gas industry and the servicing of this industry.

### **2.7.5 MANUFACTURING AND CONSTRUCTION**

Taranaki has a relatively small but distinctive manufacturing base. The region has developed a national and international reputation for its expertise in food processing, particularly of dairy products and speciality dough production. Furthermore, the special servicing needs of the dairy and petrochemical sectors (and to a lesser extent the meat, energy, industrial, chemical and timber processing sectors) have contributed to the development of both heavy and light engineering industries. Manufacturing provides approximately 16% of the region's employment opportunities.

### **2.7.6 TOURISM**

Tourism is playing an increasingly important role in the Taranaki economy with approximately 540,000 total guest nights spent in the Taranaki region by domestic and international visitors in 2005. Some 15% of total guest nights spent in the region were from international visitors. The region's mountain, forests, gardens and parks are attracting increasing numbers of visitors interested in rural based and outdoor recreational activities

### **2.7.7 INFRASTRUCTURE**

A vital part of the Taranaki economy is its physical infrastructure. The region's road and rail network, Port Taranaki, New Plymouth Airport, power generation facilities, oil and gas pipelines, transmission lines and sewerage and water treatment and reticulation systems provide essential services to the regional community and to the regional and national economies and should be given appropriate recognition in regional and district plans.

Taranaki is generally well connected and serviced from a roading infrastructural perspective relative to its size and population. However, there are roading and transport infrastructure issues that require ongoing attention if Taranaki is to meet its current and anticipated growth and development needs. Some of these issues concern route security and reliability (particularly in relation to State Highway 3 north and south and State Highway 43), network efficiency and capacity (for example in relation to our rural roads and urban New Plymouth) and safety issues such as passing opportunities, road and bridge widths etc.

### **2.7.8 AGGREGATE EXTRACTION**

There are presently 27 quarries located within the Taranaki Region. These quarries are vital to the region as they provide the base material for infrastructure and construction necessary to ensure the social, cultural and economic well being of the people of the region. In addition, these quarries are also a significant employer within the region.



## 3. Statutory and planning framework

### 3.1 INTEGRATED MANAGEMENT

The Resource Management Act promotes integrated management of resources and the environment. Integrated management is an active process of managing the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources as a whole and involves a consideration of:

- (a) the effects of the use of one natural resource on **other natural and physical resources** or on other parts of the environment recognising that such effects may occur across space and time
- (b) the need for cooperation and coordination in relation to the statutory roles and responsibilities of **other agencies** in respect of the management of natural and physical resources or other management responsibilities that could affect those resources
- (c) the effect of **other statutory documents** prepared by the Taranaki Regional Council and others with functions and responsibilities under the Act that address issues relating to the management of natural and physical resources
- (d) the social and economic objectives and interests of the community, recognising that natural and physical resources cannot be managed without having regard to **social, economic and cultural factors**.

The Taranaki Regional Council intends to promote an integrated approach to the use, development and protection of the natural and physical resources of the Taranaki region through the methods contained in this Regional Policy Statement. The issues, objectives, policies and methods addressed in this Statement relate to 26 resource management issues of regional significance. However, as noted in the following subsections, there are connections with other statutory authorities and documents that address various parts of the environment or relate to activities that may affect or impinge on environmental outcomes. The procedures for ensuring that integrated management continues to be addressed when implementing this Statement are set out in section 17.1 of Part D of this Statement.

### 3.2 THE RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT

The Resource Management Act is the principal statute for the management of natural and physical resources. The Act establishes an integrated framework for the management of land, air, water and the control of discharges into the environment, and provides for national, regional and local territorial levels of responsibility.

### 3.2.1 PURPOSE AND PRINCIPLES

Section 5 [the purpose] of the Resource Management Act and sections 6, 7 and 8 (the 'principles') establish the overall framework and direction for resource management in Taranaki.

The Resource Management Act has a single purpose, set out in section 5(1) of that Act, which is "...to promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources."

Section 5(2) of the Resource Management Act defines sustainable management as "... managing the use, development, and protection of natural and physical resources in a way, or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety while –

- (a) sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources (excluding minerals) to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations; and
- (b) safeguarding the life-supporting capacity of air, water, soil and ecosystems; and
- (c) avoiding, remedying, or mitigating any adverse effects of activities on the environment."

In addition to the purpose of the Resource Management Act, all persons exercising functions and powers under the Act are required to recognise and provide for, have particular regard to, and take into account certain 'principles' listed in sections 6, 7 and 8 of the Act:

**"6. Matters of national importance** – In achieving the purpose of this Act, all persons exercising functions and powers under it, in relation to managing the use, development, and protection of natural and physical resources, shall recognise and provide for the following matters of national importance:

- (a) the preservation of the natural character of the coastal environment (including the coastal marine area), wetlands, and lakes and rivers and their margins, and the protection of them from inappropriate subdivision, use, and development;
- (b) the protection of outstanding natural features and landscapes from inappropriate subdivision, use, and development.
- (c) the protection of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna;
- (d) the maintenance and enhancement of public access to and along the coastal marine area, lakes, and rivers;

- (e) *the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taonga;*
- (f) *the protection of historic heritage from inappropriate subdivision, use and development; and*
- (g) *the protection of recognised customary activities.*

**7. Other matters** – *In achieving the purpose of this Act, all persons exercising functions and powers under it, in relation to managing the use, development, and protection of natural and physical resources, shall have particular regard to-*

- (a) *kaitiakitanga;*
- (aa) *the ethic of stewardship;*
- (b) *the efficient use and development of natural and physical resources;*
- (ba) *the efficiency of the end use of energy;*
- (c) *the maintenance and enhancement of amenity values;*
- (d) *intrinsic values of ecosystems;*
- (e) *[Repealed];*
- (f) *maintenance and enhancement of the quality of the environment;*
- (g) *any finite characteristics of natural and physical resources;*
- (h) *the protection of the habitat of trout and salmon;*
- (i) *the effects of climate change;*
- (j) *the benefits to be derived from the use and development of renewable energy.*

**8. Treaty of Waitangi** – *In achieving the purpose of this Act, all persons exercising functions and powers under it, in relation to managing the use, development, and protection of natural and physical resources, shall take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Te tiriti o Waitangi)."*

### 3.2.2 FUNCTIONS AND POWERS

To give effect to the purpose and principles of the Resource Management Act, central government, regional councils and territorial authorities have specific functions, powers and duties.

Regional councils and territorial authorities have been given primary responsibilities for the management of natural and physical resources within their areas, subject to the requirements of central government as exercised through the instruments available under the Resource Management Act (section 3.2.3 below) or through other legislation (section 3.3 below).

Under section 30 of the Resource Management Act, the Taranaki Regional Council is responsible for the control of water, air, land (for the purposes of soil conservation, water management, natural hazards avoidance and mitigation and hazardous substances management), the investigation of land for the purposes of identifying and monitoring contaminated land, control of the coastal marine area (in conjunction with the Minister of Conservation), control of the discharge of contaminants into the environment, the control of river and lake beds, the establishment and implementation of objectives, policies and methods for indigenous biodiversity, and the strategic integration of infrastructure with land use through objectives, policies and methods.

Under section 31 of the Resource Management Act, the three territorial authorities are responsible, in relation to their district, for the preparation of objectives and policies for integrated management of the effects of land use, control of the effects of land use including responsibility for the avoidance and mitigation of natural hazards and hazardous substances management, the prevention, mitigation of the adverse effects of the use of contaminated land, indigenous biodiversity, noise control and control of activities on the surface of water in rivers and lakes.

Under section 30(1)(a) of the Resource Management Act, the Taranaki Regional Council is further responsible for preparing objectives, policies and methods to achieve integrated management of the natural and physical resources of the region and for preparing objectives and policies in relation to any actual or potential effects of the use, development, or protection of land which are of regional significance. To give effect to this responsibility the Council has prepared this Regional Policy Statement.

### 3.2.3 POLICIES, PLANS AND OTHER INSTRUMENTS

The Resource Management Act provides for a hierarchy of policies, plans and other statutory instruments to enable central and local government to carry out their functions. Figure 5 outlines the policy hierarchy under the Act, including the main statutory instruments.

At the national level, the main statutory instruments include:

- **National environmental standards:** Regulations made by Order in Council on the recommendation of the Minister for the Environment, to prescribe technical standards relating to the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources.

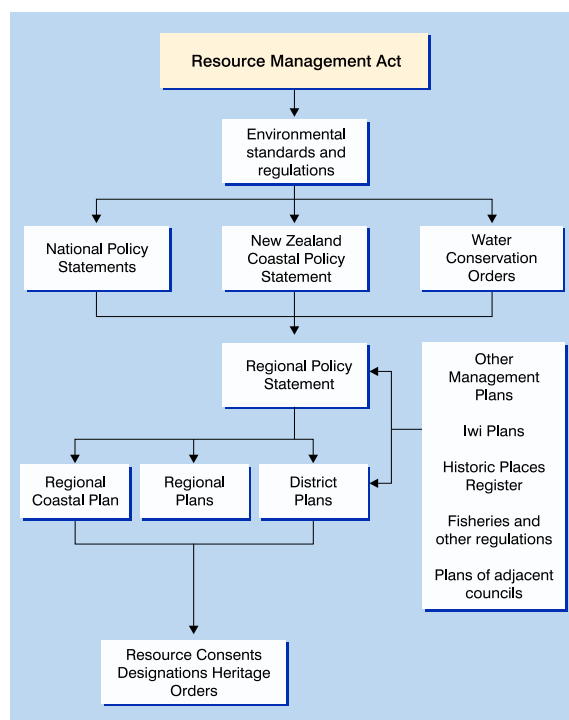
- **National policy statements:** Issued on the recommendation of the Minister for the Environment, they state policy on matters of national significance relevant to achieving the purpose of the Act.
- **New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement:** Prepared and issued on the recommendation of the Minister of Conservation, it states policies for achieving the purpose of the Act in relation to the coastal environment of New Zealand.
- **Water conservation orders:** Issued on the recommendation of the Minister for the Environment and made by Order in Council to recognise and sustain outstanding amenity or intrinsic values associated with a waterbody that warrants protection.
- **Regulations:** Made by Order in Council to provide for the matters specified in section 360 of the Act.

At the regional or district level, the main statutory instruments include:

- **Regional policy statements:** Prepared by regional councils to achieve the purpose of the Act by providing an overview of the resource management issues of the region and policies and methods to achieve integrated management (see section 3.4 below).
- **Regional coastal plans:** Prepared by regional councils to achieve the purpose of the Act in relation to the coastal marine area of the region. Regional coastal plans may contain rules to control activities and effects.
- **Regional plans:** Prepared by regional councils to assist them in carrying out their functions under the Act. Regional plans are optional and may contain rules to control activities and effects.
- **District plans:** Prepared by district councils to assist them in carrying out their functions under the Act. District plans may contain rules to control activities and effects.
- **Resource consents:** Required either from regional councils or territorial authorities (or both) to carry out activities that would otherwise contravene the restrictions in the Act on the use and development of natural and physical resources.

Regional policy statements cannot include rules. Nevertheless, they are important and 'sit' high up in the hierarchy of policy instruments under the Resource Management Act – regional policy statements follow after national policy statements but before regional and district plans. Regional and district plans must give effect to the Regional Policy Statement. In addition, under section 104(1) of the

Resource Management Act, a consent authority considering a resource consent must have regard to any relevant regional policy statement.



**Figure 5** Hierarchy of planning instruments under the Resource Management Act

### 3.3 OTHER STATUTES

The Taranaki Regional Council and the region's three territorial authorities may take action under other statutes to give effect to objectives and policies contained in the Regional Policy Statement. These include:

- **Local Government Act 2002 and Local Government Act 1974** (where it remains in force): Establishes functions, powers and procedures for local government.
- **Biosecurity Act 1993:** Provides for the exclusion, eradication and effective management of pests and unwanted organisms.
- **Public Works Act 1981:** Provides for acquisition and use of land for public works.
- **Building Act 2004:** Provides for the regulation of building work, the establishment of a licensing regime for building practitioners, and the setting of performance standards for buildings.
- **Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002:** Establishes national, regional and local functions and responsibilities in relation to civil defence emergencies including the preparation of regional and district civil defence plans and to provide for restoration and rehabilitation.

- **Reserves Act 1977:** Establishes powers and responsibilities relating to the acquisition, classification and management of reserves for recreational, historic, scenic, nature, scientific or other purposes.
- **Health Act 1956:** Provides for the protection, promotion and conservation of public health, including public health matters relating to water supply, sanitary works, buildings and offensive trades. The Act provides wide powers to local authorities particularly territorial authorities, to control nuisances as defined in the Act.
- **Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996:** Provides for the protection of the environment, and the health and safety of people and communities, by preventing or managing the adverse effects of hazardous substances and new organisms. This Act, amongst other things, regulates the handling, labelling, storage and use of hazardous substances.
- **Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977:** Provides for the safeguarding of life and property related to fire in forests and rural areas. Territorial authorities promote and carry out fire control measures as fire authorities.
- **Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941:** Provides powers for regional councils as catchment boards to promote soil conservation, the prevention and mitigation of soil erosion, the prevention of damage by floods and the use of land in a manner that will help achieve these purposes.
- **Land Drainage Act 1908:** Provides for the establishment of drainage districts and boards and for powers of local authorities in relation to cleaning, repairing and maintaining watercourses and drains. Powers are provided to order the removal of obstructions from watercourses or drains where an obstruction is likely to cause damage to property.
- **Land Transport Management Act 2003:** The purpose of the Act is to contribute to achieving an affordable, integrated, safe, responsive and sustainable land transport system. The Act provides for the preparation of regional land transport programmes by regional councils and national land transport programmes by the New Zealand Transport Agency and for the preparation of regional and national land transport strategies.
- **Maritime Transport Act 1994:** Provides for international, national, regional and site-specific planning and responses to protect the marine environment from marine oil spills.

Many other Acts are relevant to the achievement of integrated resource management in Taranaki. These include the following:

- **Conservation Act 1987:** Promotes the conservation of natural and historic resources and establishes the Department of Conservation. The Act provides for the acquisition and management of conservation areas, protected areas and stewardship areas.
- **National Parks Act 1980:** Provides for the administration and management of national parks by the New Zealand Conservation Authority and conservation boards and for the maintenance of national parks in their natural state and the preservation of indigenous plants and animals within national parks.
- **Forests Act 1949:** Covers the promotion of sustainable forest management of indigenous forest land. The Act controls the harvesting of indigenous forests for timber production and the export of indigenous forest produce.
- **Foreshore and Seabed Act 2004:** Provides for the protection by the Crown of the public foreshore and seabed on behalf of all the people of New Zealand, including the protection of the association of whanau, hapu, and iwi with areas of the public foreshore and seabed.
- **Wildlife Act 1953:** Provides for the protection of all native mammals, most native birds, reptiles and amphibians, and some terrestrial invertebrates.
- **Wild Animal Control Act 1977:** Deals with the control of harmful species of introduced wild animals and the regulation of commercial and recreational hunters.
- **Historic Places Act 1993:** Establishes the Historic Places Trust and promotes the identification, protection, preservation and conservation of the historic and cultural heritage of New Zealand.
- **Marine Reserves Act 1971:** Provides for the establishment and management of areas of the sea and foreshore as marine reserves for the purpose of preserving them in their natural state as the habitat of marine life for scientific study.
- **Fisheries Act 1983:** Provides for the conservation and management of fisheries and fisheries resources in New Zealand's territorial sea and exclusive economic zone.
- **Queen Elizabeth II National Trust Act 1977:** Establishes the Queen Elizabeth II National Trust to provide, preserve, protect or enhance land or water with aesthetic, cultural, recreational, scenic, scientific or social interest or value.



- **Energy Efficiency and Conservation Act 2001:** Establishes the Energy Efficiency and Conservation Authority to promote energy efficiency, energy conservation and renewable energy within the context of a sustainable energy future.
- **New Zealand Walkways Act 1990:** Provides for the establishment of walking tracks over public and private land for recreation and enjoyment.
- **Treaty settlement legislation:** The Ngati Ruanui Claims Settlement Act 2003, the Ngati Tama Claims Settlement Act 2003, the Ngaa Rauru Kiiitahi Claims Settlement Act 2005 and the Ngati Mutunga Claims Settlement Act 2006 have been passed to settle historic Treaty of Waitangi claims. These statutes contain statutory acknowledgements for areas of particular cultural, spiritual, historical and traditional association to those iwi. The settlement legislation requires information on statutory acknowledgements to be included in the Regional Policy Statement. The Crown is also processing Treaty of Waitangi settlements with other Taranaki iwi.

Where appropriate, the Regional Policy Statement makes reference to actions that may be undertaken under other legislation to achieve the purpose of either the Resource Management Act or this Regional Policy Statement.

### 3.4 THE REGIONAL POLICY STATEMENT FOR TARANAKI

#### 3.4.1 PURPOSE AND CONTENT

The Resource Management Act requires each regional council to have in place, a regional policy statement for its region.

The purpose of a regional policy statement, as prescribed in section 59 of the Resource Management Act, is “...to achieve the purpose of the Act by providing an overview of the resource management issues of the region and policies and methods to achieve integrated management of the natural and physical resources of the whole region”.

The Resource Management Act also sets out what regional policy statements must include. Under section 62 of the Act, a regional policy statement must state:

- (a) the significant resource management issues for the region
- (b) the resource management issues of significance to:
  - (i) iwi authorities in the region; and

- (ii) the board of a foreshore and seabed reserve, to the extent that those issues relate to that reserve;
- (c) the objectives sought to be achieved by the statement;
- (d) the policies for those issues and objectives and an explanation of those policies;
- (e) the methods (excluding rules) used, or to be used, to implement the policies;
- (f) the principal reasons for adopting the objectives, policies, and methods of implementation set out in the statement;
- (g) the environmental results anticipated from implementation of those policies and methods;
- (h) the processes to be used to deal with issues that cross local authority boundaries, and issues between territorial authorities or between regions;
- (i) the local authority responsible in the whole or any part of the region for specifying the objectives, policies, and methods for the control of the use of land—
  - (i) to avoid or mitigate natural hazards or any group of hazards; and
  - (ii) to prevent or mitigate the adverse effects of the storage, use, disposal, or transportation of hazardous substances; and
  - (iii) to maintain indigenous biological diversity;
- (j) the procedures used to monitor the efficiency and effectiveness of the policies or methods contained in the statement; and
- (k) any other information required for the purpose of the regional council's functions, powers, and duties under this Act.

The Regional Policy Statement (and regional and district plans) must also include information on statutory acknowledgements contained in Treaty of Waitangi settlement acts.

#### 3.4.2 METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

For each of the issues identified in Parts B and C (sections 4 to 16) of the Regional Policy Statement, a range of methods of implementation of the objectives and policies has been adopted having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness. The main types of methods are categorised under the following nine headings:

- advocacy – persuading others to act
- facilitation – bringing various parties together to carry out an activity or address an issue
- education and communication – providing information, advice or training
- voluntary agreements – reaching agreements with various parties to address an issue or supporting

agreements developed by those parties themselves (eg, industry codes of practice or accords)

- financial incentives – making a financial contribution to influence behaviour
- service provider – carrying out a programme using the Council’s own resources
- regulation – developing and enforcing regional or district rules
- monitoring – gathering information and reporting on the results of monitoring
- research – applied research to address any gaps in information.

### 3.4.3 EFFECT OF THE REGIONAL POLICY STATEMENT

The Regional Policy Statement is a statement of policy for the Taranaki region (as constituted under the Local Government (Taranaki Region) Reorganisation Order 1989). The local authorities comprising the Taranaki region are:

- the Taranaki Regional Council
- the territorial authorities of New Plymouth District Council, South Taranaki District Council and the Stratford District Council excluding the part of the Stratford District not within the Taranaki region.

Regional and district policies and plans prepared by these authorities are **to give effect to** the Regional Policy Statement.

In addition, the Taranaki Regional Council and territorial authorities are required to “...**have regard to**” relevant policies and objectives in the Regional Policy Statement when considering an application for a resource consent (section 104(1) of the Resource Management Act).

Many of the objectives and policies and associated methods of implementation contained in the Regional Policy Statement confirm existing policies and methods. These have been reviewed, formalised and focused to give effect to the purpose of the Regional Policy Statement and the Resource Management Act.

## 3.5 OTHER STATUTORY DOCUMENTS

There are a range of other statutory documents prepared by the Taranaki Regional Council, the region’s territorial authorities and other organisations that play an important role in promoting the integrated and sustainable management of Taranaki’s natural and physical resources.

### 3.5.1 REGIONAL PLANS

Since the adoption of the first Regional Policy Statement in 1994, regional and district plans have

been prepared and management programmes implemented. The Taranaki Regional Council has prepared four regional plans under the Act. These plans are the *Regional Air Quality Plan for Taranaki* (1997); the *Regional Coastal Plan for Taranaki* (1997); *Regional Fresh Water Plan for Taranaki* (2001) and the *Regional Soil Plan for Taranaki* (2001). These plans assist in the integrated and sustainable management of the region’s natural and physical resources by applying a range of policies and methods to address the issues identified in the plans. They also contain rules that mean that resource consents may be required for activities that affect the resources covered by those particular plans. Rules in the plans may also permit activities with no or only minor environmental effects subject to conditions that aim to prevent or minimise adverse environmental effects.

A summary of the main relevant provisions of each of the regional plans is outlined below:

- **Regional Air Quality Plan for Taranaki:** This Plan contains provisions that address the discharge of contaminants to air, including discharges to air from industrial and trade premises and discharges to air of agrichemicals and of contaminants arising from the burning of vegetation on production land and forested land. In addition to rules, the Plan also contains good management practice guidelines for intensive pig or poultry farming, agrichemical spraying and the burning of vegetation.
- **Regional Coastal Plan for Taranaki:** This Plan applies to the coastal marine area, which extends from mean high water springs out to 12 nautical miles. The Plan identifies four management areas for the coastal marine area in Taranaki: Area A [Areas of outstanding coastal value], Area B [Estuaries], Area C [Open coast] and Area D [Port Taranaki]. Within these areas the Plan contains rules that address the adverse effects of structures, discharges, the disturbance of or deposits to the foreshore and seabed and reclamations. General rules also apply to all areas.
- **Regional Fresh Water Plan for Taranaki:** This Plan contains provisions that address activities involving the use of water. The Plan addresses the taking and use of water, point and diffuse source discharges to land and water, the use of river and lake beds, the construction of bores and wells, land drainage and the protection of wetlands. Rules have been included in the Plan to protect regionally significant wetlands and water levels and flows in rivers with high natural values. The Plan contains good management practice guidelines on the treatment and disposal of

agriculture effluent, the spraying of agrichemicals and the construction of groundwater bores and wells.

- **Regional Soil Plan for Taranaki:** This Plan contains provisions that address activities impacting on soil conservation. The Plan addresses accelerated erosion and soil health. The use of land is generally permitted under section 9(3) of the Act unless that use contravenes a rule in a plan. Rules in the Plan permit vegetation clearance on erosion prone land, subject to conditions that aim to minimise adverse environmental effects associated with the clearance of vegetation.

### 3.5.2 DISTRICT PLANS

The New Plymouth, South Taranaki and Stratford district councils are required by the Resource Management Act to prepare a district plan for their respective district. All three territorial authorities have an operative district plan for their district, these being:

- **The New Plymouth District Plan (2005)**
- **The Stratford District Plan (1997)**
- **The South Taranaki District Plan (2005).**

These district plans contain provisions controlling the effects of use, development or protection of land, including subdivision in that district. They will be reviewed and changed over time.

### 3.5.3 LONG-TERM COUNCIL COMMUNITY PLAN AND ANNUAL PLANS

Under the Local Government Act 2002, the Taranaki Regional Council has prepared its *2009/2019 Long Term Council Community Plan*, which sets out the Council's strategic directions and programmes for the next decade. The Plan provides a description of the significant activities that the Council plans to carry out over the next 10 years, the objectives of those activities and their costs.

The Long-term Council Community Plan also identifies seven broad community outcomes for the region. These are:

- **Connected Taranaki** – a region that delivers accessible and integrated infrastructure, transport and communications systems, which meet the needs of residents, business and visitors.
- **Prosperous Taranaki** – a region that boasts a sustainable, resilient and innovative economy that prospers within the natural and social environments.
- **Secure and healthy Taranaki** – a region that provides a safe, healthy and friendly place to live, work or visit.

- **Skilled Taranaki** – a region that values and supports learning so that all people can play a full and active role in its social, cultural and economic life.
- **Sustainable Taranaki** – a region that appreciates its natural environment and its physical and human resources in planning, delivery and protection.
- **Together Taranaki** – a region that is caring and inclusive, works together, and enables people to have a strong and distinctive sense of identity.
- **Vibrant Taranaki** – a region that provides high quality and diverse cultural and recreational experiences, and encourages independence and creativity.

Through its activities in the Long-term Council Community Plan and in annual plans, the Taranaki Regional Council identifies how it will contribute towards achieving these community outcomes. Progress towards achieving these outcomes is reported on every three years. The outcomes and the indicators used to measure progress towards their achievement were identified following a joint regional and district council process.

The region's three territorial authorities – the New Plymouth, Stratford and South Taranaki district councils – are also required to prepare long-term council community plans and annual plans, which set out the significant activities that they will undertake to achieve the community outcomes.

### 3.5.4 OTHER PLANS AND STRATEGIES

Many other plans and strategies prepared by local and central government agencies and other organisations can contribute to the objectives and policies in the Regional Policy Statement. These include pest management strategies, regional marine oil spill response plan, regional and district waste management strategies and plans, reserve management plans, conservation management strategies and plans, the Egmont National Park Management Plan, civil defence emergency management plans, the New Plymouth Coastal Strategy, land transport programmes and asset management plans.

The Taranaki Regional Council must prepare a Regional Land Transport Strategy (RLTS) for the region, under the Land Transport Management Act 2003. The RLTS (incorporating the Council's Regional Passenger Transport Plan) details the region's intentions for land transport and guides development of the land transport system. Its purpose is to contribute to the aim of achieving an affordable,

integrated, safe, responsive and sustainable land transport system. The integration of transport and land use and other issues addressed in the RPS is important in promoting the sustainable management of resources and the RLTS is a key document in contributing to this.

## **Part B**

### **Resource management issues of significance**



# Statement of significant resource management issues

Part B identifies the significant resource management issues of the Taranaki region and presents the objectives, policies and methods of implementation to address those issues. These issues are summarised in Table 1. In relation to each issue, the Regional Policy Statement presents:

- (a) an overview of the issue
- (b) the objectives to be achieved by the Regional Policy Statement
- (c) the policies for the issues and objectives (and an explanation of those policies)
- (d) the methods (actions, programmes) to implement the policies
- (e) the principal reasons for adopting the objectives, policies, and methods of implementation
- (f) the environmental results anticipated from the implementation of those policies and methods.

Each of the issues, objectives, policies, methods of implementation and environmental results anticipated has been given a unique identifying number. This number is based on a three letter symbol (which relates to the subsection in this part of the RPS in which the relevant issue, objective etc is found) followed by a number 1, 2, 3 etc. For example all issues, objectives, policies and methods etc in the subsection entitled “Protecting our soil from accelerated erosion” will be preceded by the letters AER (for “accelerated erosion”). Objective 1 for this issue will therefore read AER Objective 1. Similarly Policy 1 will be AER Policy 1 and Method 1, AER Method 1 and so on. This allows each specific provision in this part of the document to be identified by a unique number.

In accordance with section 62(1)(i) of the Resource Management Act, Part B also sets out the local authority responsible for specifying the objectives, policies and methods for the control of the use of land to:

- (a) avoid or mitigate natural hazards
- (b) prevent or mitigate the adverse effects of the storage, use, disposal, or transportation of hazardous substances
- (c) maintain indigenous biological diversity.

In formulating the objectives, policies and methods and other provisions of this Regional Policy Statement, the Taranaki Regional Council has recognised that the fundamental purpose of the Regional Policy Statement is to achieve the purpose of the Act itself ie, to

**Table 1:** Summary of significant resource management issues

Issues	
<b>Resource use and development</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Recognising the role of resource use and development in the Taranaki region (UDR)</li> </ul>
<b>Land &amp; Soil</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protecting our soil from accelerated erosion (AER)</li> <li>Maintaining healthy soils (HSO)</li> <li>Managing the effects of hazardous substances and contaminated sites (HZC)</li> </ul>
<b>Fresh water</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sustainable allocation of surface water resources (WAL)</li> <li>Maintaining and enhancing the quality of water in our rivers, streams, lakes, and wetlands (WQU)</li> <li>Maintaining groundwater flows and quality (GWR)</li> <li>Protecting the natural character of our wetlands (WET)</li> <li>Managing land drainage and other diversions of water (LDD)</li> <li>Managing effects associated with the use of river and lake beds (RLB)</li> <li>Maintaining and enhancing public access to and along rivers and lakes (WPA)</li> </ul>
<b>Air</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Maintaining our excellent air quality (AQU)</li> <li>Responding to the effects of climate change (CCH)</li> </ul>
<b>Coast</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protecting the natural character of our coast (CNC)</li> <li>Maintaining and enhancing coastal water quality (CWQ)</li> <li>Maintaining and enhancing public access to and along the coast (CPA)</li> </ul>
<b>Indigenous biodiversity</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Maintaining and enhancing our indigenous biodiversity (BIO)</li> </ul>
<b>Natural features and landscapes, historic heritage and amenity values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protecting our outstanding and important natural features and landscapes (NFL)</li> <li>Protecting our historic heritage (HIS)</li> <li>Maintaining and enhancing amenity values (AMY)</li> </ul>
<b>Natural hazards</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reducing the risks to the community from natural hazards (HAZ)</li> </ul>
<b>Waste management</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Minimising waste and managing its disposal (WST)</li> </ul>
<b>Minerals</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Recognising and providing for appropriate use and development of minerals (MIN)</li> </ul>
<b>Energy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sustainably managing energy (ENE)</li> </ul>
<b>Built environment</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Promoting sustainable urban development (SUD)</li> <li>Providing for regionally significant infrastructure (INF)</li> </ul>

promote the sustainable management of the natural and physical resources of the region. The Council’s intention in preparing this Regional Policy Statement has therefore been to recognise the role of resource use and development, as well as protection, in the Taranaki region and their contribution to enabling people and communities to provide for their economic, social and cultural well-being, while at the same time ensuring that any adverse effects on the environment are avoided, remedied or mitigated.

The statements of significant resource management issues may address either use, development or protection of resources depending on the primary focus, significance or relevance to Taranaki of the issue in question. The objectives, policies and methods which follow the issues then establish the framework for sustainable management overall.

The objectives have been formulated to focus on the long-term environmental outcome or result that is desired in relation to the issues identified. They are high level goals to be aimed for and therefore do not contain qualifying statements for example that adverse effects be avoided, remedied or mitigated “as far as practicable” or “as time and resources allow”. However, the Council recognises that the objectives may not be fully achieved over the life of the Statement and that in some situations benefits may outweigh adverse effects including adverse effects that are not able to be fully avoided, remedied or mitigated. The objectives however, establish an overall outcome that is to be worked towards.

Policies are statements of a general course of action in working towards objectives. They may deal with resource use, development or protection or all of these. Some policies in the Statement are broad in their application while others are narrow or specific. Some policies direct that actions be carried out in a certain way while others do not and some policies contain qualifiers such as “as far as practicable”. This reflects the nature of the issues being addressed, the efficiency and effectiveness of various policy options and the overall costs, benefits and practicalities of the actions proposed. All policies (and related objectives and methods) read as a whole are designed to promote the sustainable management of resources.

The methods of implementation listed in the Statement are the specific actions, techniques, projects or programmes designed to implement policies. For the purposes of integrated management, the Statement lists the methods that the Taranaki Regional Council will use to implement policies. It also lists those methods that territorial authorities “may wish to consider” and in this way enables territorial authorities to choose which methods they adopt to give effect to policies in the Statement. The methods also refer to actions that might be applied by other agencies acting under other legislation. However, the Taranaki Regional Council has no jurisdiction under the Resource Management Act to require other agencies (such as government departments) to carry out actions under other legislation.

Issues, objectives, policies or methods in the Statement may refer to avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects or any adverse effects of activities on the environment. The Council considers

that in carrying out its functions under the Act, it must consider any adverse effects of activities on the environment, including minor effects, in line with the requirements of section 5(2)(a), (b) and (c) of the Act. However adverse effects will be addressed by the Council in different ways to reflect the different nature and scale of effects. It may not always be possible or necessary to completely avoid, remedy or mitigate all adverse effects. Some effects will be so small or minor as to be insignificant or inconsequential and can be ignored. Other effects may be more than minor but may not be able to be avoided, remedied or mitigated fully and positive effects and benefits may outweigh adverse effects. The degree and significance of effects including the potential for cumulative effects will need to be considered in the circumstances of each case and an overall weighing up or balancing of factors made under the section 5 sustainable management purpose of the Act, other provisions of Part 2 of the Act and other policies in this Regional Policy Statement.



## 4. Use and development of resources

---

### 4.1 RECOGNISING THE ROLE OF RESOURCE USE AND DEVELOPMENT IN TARANAKI

#### Background to the issue

The sustainable management of natural and physical resources means managing the use, development and protection of resources in a way or at a rate that enables people and communities to provide for their economic, social and cultural wellbeing while meeting the requirements of section 5 (2) (a), (b) and (c) of the Act.

A notable feature of the Taranaki region is its reliance on the region's natural and physical resources for its economic and social wellbeing. Farming and other land based activities play a prominent role in employment. Over 16% of Taranaki's labour force is employed in agriculture, forestry and fishing. Dairying dominates farming in Taranaki particularly on the ring plain. Over 1900 dairy farms produce approximately 12% of New Zealand's total milk solids. In addition to direct farm income from milk production, the added value by the processing of milk, whey and cheese manufacturing is a significant contributor to regional employment and income. There are approximately 1150 sheep and beef farms, mostly concentrated in the inland hill country. Exotic forest plantations continue to expand. Taranaki is also one of New Zealand's leading poultry meat producing regions and has significant pig farming operations.

Taranaki's oil and gas industry is of strategic importance to New Zealand. Taranaki contains New Zealand's only commercially producing oil and gas fields. Exploration interest in the region remains high. The presence of oil and gas in the region has given rise to industries involved in the processing, distribution, use and export of hydrocarbons important to both the regional and national economy. Gas fired power stations at Stratford and New Plymouth supply electricity to the national grid. There are also significant hydroelectric power generation facilities in the region (Patea, Motukawa, Mangorei and Waiaua).

Apart from its oil and gas resources, Taranaki has important aggregate resources used in the building and construction industries. The manufacturing and construction sectors also play an important role in the regional economy. The region has developed a national and international reputation for its food processing industries, particularly in dairy and meat products and speciality dough production. Heavy and light engineering industries have developed to service the needs of the dairy and petrochemical sectors and

the meat, energy, industrial, chemical and timber processing industries.

Tourism is playing an increasingly important role in the Taranaki economy with developments based around the region's mountains, forests and other natural resources.

The region's infrastructure plays a vital role in the region's economy and the wellbeing of its people and communities. The region's road and rail network, Port Taranaki, New Plymouth airport, power generation facilities radio and telecommunications facilities, transmission lines and sewage and water treatment and reticulation systems among other infrastructure, all provide essential services to the regional community and regional and national economies.

Use and development as well as protection of natural and physical resources is therefore a significant resource management issue for Taranaki.

#### The significant issue in relation to use and development of resources in Taranaki is:

**UDR    Recognising the role of resource use and  
ISS 1    development in the Taranaki region.**

### OBJECTIVE

#### UDR OBJECTIVE 1

*To recognise the role of resource use and development in the Taranaki region and its contribution to enabling people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural wellbeing.*

### POLICY

#### Use and development of resources

#### UDR POLICY 1

*Recognition will be given in resource management processes to the role of resource use and development in the Taranaki region and its contribution to enabling people and communities to provide for their economic, social and cultural wellbeing.*

#### Explanation of the policy

Policy 1 has been adopted to recognise the role of resource use and development in Taranaki and its contribution to the social, economic and cultural wellbeing of people and communities. Use and development of resources may be of regional and national importance providing benefits to people and communities in Taranaki and to New Zealand as a

whole. The use and development of resources must be undertaken in a way which promotes the sustainable management purpose of the Act. This will mean enabling people and communities to provide for their economic, social and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety while meeting the requirements section 5 (2) (a), (b), and (c) of the Act to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations, safeguard life-supporting capacity of resources and avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on the environment.

#### Related policies

All other policies in this Regional Policy Statement.

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

**UDR**      **Implement** as appropriate **all methods** of  
**METH 1**   implementation listed in this Regional Policy Statement for the Taranaki Regional Council to implement.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following method:

**UDR**      **Implement** as appropriate **all methods** of  
**METH 2**   implementation listed in this Regional Policy Statement for territorial authorities to consider.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policy and methods

The objective, policy and methods of implementation have been adopted to ensure that the role of resource use and development in enabling people and communities to provide for their economic, social and cultural wellbeing is recognised in resource management decision making processes. Such recognition is a core part of sustainable management of resources.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### **UDR ER 1**

*Resource use and development is able to occur in accordance with the sustainable management purpose of the Act.*

## 5. Land and soil

---

This section identifies resource management issues of regional significance, which have their primary effect on Taranaki's land or soil resources. These issues are grouped under the headings of:

- protecting our soil from accelerated erosion
- maintaining healthy soils
- managing the effects of hazardous substances and contaminated sites.

### 5.1 PROTECTING OUR SOIL FROM ACCELERATED EROSION

#### Background to the issue

Soil is one of Taranaki's most important resources. This thin layer at the earth's surface is the source of food and fibre, and sustains the growth of our plants and animals. Soil also plays a role in sequestering carbon. Soil erosion leads to land degradation and loss of soil productivity, capability and versatility. Other offsite effects of erosion range from reduction in water quality and degradation of aquatic habitats from increased siltation, and downstream flooding from aggradation of riverbeds, to damage to archaeological sites which are addressed in other sections of the Regional Policy Statement.

Soils are subject to natural processes of erosion. However, human activities, particularly where inappropriate land management practices occur, may cause accelerated erosion. Inappropriate land management practices may include pastoral livestock grazing, earthworks associated with roading and tracking, disturbance of indigenous vegetation or harvesting of plantation forests on erosion-prone land without appropriate management to avoid or mitigate erosion.

Erosion-prone lands are those lands that because of their geology, soil type, slope angle and aspect, climate and vegetation cover, are more prone to erosion than other areas. In Taranaki these areas are found predominantly in the inland hill country where shallow soils have formed on sandstone, siltstone and mudstone slopes, and on the coastal sand country where land adjacent to the coast is influenced by wind-blown sand, forming sand dunes and sand flats.

Approximately 92% of Taranaki land is sustainably managed and does not carry a severe or high risk of accelerated erosion in the long term so long as good management practices are continued. Natural erosion rates are high on the slopes of Mount Taranaki but the human impacts in the Egmont National Park are

negligible. Natural erosion rates are also low on the ring plain and the western fringe of the hill country. However, the inland hill country and the coastal sand country are particularly susceptible to 'unsustainable' land use activities (activities that carry a severe or high risk of erosion in the long term). This is because the geology, soil type, slope angle and aspect, climate and vegetation cover found in these areas make them more prone to erosion.

Hill country areas most susceptible to erosion are those steeper areas cleared for pasture – generally on slopes greater than 28°. In areas planted for plantation forestry, accelerated erosion rates are higher than natural erosion rates but not as high as erosion rates under pasture. Areas that remain bush-clad, including indigenous forests managed for a sustainable yield harvest, generally have the lowest rates of erosion. Areas that remain in native bush have the lowest rates of erosion as they have a constant closed forest canopy. Erosion rates of land under plantation forestry are higher because a plantation forest does not maintain a constant closed canopy due to its rotational life history. The time period a plantation forest is without a closed forest canopy is minimal however (typically 4 to 5 years) which is why a plantation forest is more beneficial for protecting certain classes of land from erosion than other land uses such as pasture. Natural erosion rates are moderate in the coastal sand country, but can be exacerbated by land use activities that expose topsoil to wind causing blow-out and the re-deposition of the underlying sand in localised areas.

**The significant issue in relation to protecting soil from accelerated erosion in Taranaki is:**

**AER ISS 1 Promoting sustainable land use to address accelerated erosion on erosion-prone land, with a particular focus on the hill country and the coastal sand country.**

#### OBJECTIVE

##### **AER OBJECTIVE 1**

*To maintain and enhance the soil resource of the Taranaki region by avoiding, remedying or mitigating the adverse effects of accelerated erosion on soil resources.*

#### POLICIES

##### **Sustainable land use and management practices**

##### **AER POLICY 1**

*Encourage land use and management practices that will promote the sustainable use and development of land and soil resources and minimise soil erosion by:*

- (a) *avoiding, where practicable, practices that cause accelerated erosion; and*
- (b) *remediating or mitigating the adverse effects of accelerated erosion where it occurs.*

#### Erosion-prone land

##### **AER POLICY 2**

*Priority will be given by the Taranaki Regional Council to encouraging sustainable land management practices that avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects arising from soil disturbance and vegetation disturbance activities on erosion-prone land, with particular focus on:*

- (a) *accelerated erosion of soil in the hill country; and*
- (b) *localised accelerated blow-out and re-deposition of sandy soil in the coastal sand country.*

#### Explanation of the policies

Most land use activities in Taranaki are carried out in a sustainable manner that causes little or no accelerated erosion. Even where there is potential for an activity to result in accelerated erosion, the adoption of certain techniques, or the taking into account the susceptibility of the land to soil erosion, can avoid, remedy or mitigate any potential soil loss. Policy 1 seeks to encourage sustainable land uses and practices and in so doing avoiding, remediating or mitigating the adverse effects of accelerated erosion. Consideration of what constitutes ‘sustainable land uses and management practices’ depends on the nature and scale of the activity and the susceptibility of the land and soil resource to accelerated erosion, and may range from pastoral farming, mixed livestock and forestry production forestry, soil conservation plantings, land retirement to indigenous forest protection.

Policy 2 recognises that the potential for accelerated erosion is most significant in the hill country and coastal sand country. Therefore, the Taranaki Regional Council will focus its efforts in these areas.

#### Related policies

All policies relating to **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality], and **Section 8.1** [Natural character of the coast]; Policy 1 of **Section 8.2** [Coastal water quality]; all policies in **Section 9** [Indigenous biodiversity]; policies 1, 2 and 3 of **Section 11** [Natural hazards].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

**AER METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation that address accelerated erosion.

**AER METH 2** Consider and if appropriate apply **regional rules** to regulate soil and vegetation disturbance activities that cause or exacerbate erosion.

**AER METH 3** Implement the **Sustainable Land Management Programme** to improve physical sustainability in the hill country and the coastal sand country by:

- (a) liaising with and consulting with interested land users;
- (b) preparing property plans in conjunction with landowners whose land is susceptible to erosion, containing property-specific advice on sustainable land management practices and erosion control techniques; and
- (c) providing on-going technical advice, information and other assistance to plan holders promoting physical sustainability.

**AER METH 4** Consider the use of **financial incentives**, such as the provision of plant material at low cost to landowners, for land stabilisation and soil conservation purposes.

**AER METH 5** Provide **advice and information**, including guidelines to landowners, resource users and the public to:

- (a) promote awareness of soil erosion issues;
- (b) encourage the adoption of sustainable land management principles and practices to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of soil and vegetation disturbance activities, including the retention of topsoil, the promotion of soil accumulation techniques and low-till sowing; and
- (c) promote appropriate planting throughout Taranaki in order to prevent the exacerbation of soil erosion and encourage the use of industry recognised guidelines or Codes of Practice such as the Logging Industry Research Organisation’s Forestry Code of Practice and other relevant industry guidelines.

**AER METH 6** **Support**, as appropriate, the work of the Taranaki Tree Trust, district councils, the Department of Conservation, and other appropriate organisations in the protection or retirement of areas of indigenous forest

on highly erosion-prone land.

**AER METH 7** **Monitor and gather information** on the state of physical sustainability, pressures on soil resources, and responses to management.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following method:

**AER METH 8** **Control**, through appropriate provisions in district plans, or conditions on resource consents, earthworks and site development not dealt with in regional plans, to avoid or mitigate the actual or potential adverse effects of accelerated erosion on land and soil resources where such control is necessary and appropriate to achieve the purpose of the Act.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods of implementation recognise that soil is one of Taranaki's most important resources. They establish a policy framework to maintain and enhance the soil resource by reducing the incidence of accelerated erosion. The objective has been adopted to maintain and enhance soil resources, but it may not always be possible or practicable to enhance soil resources at all sites or places when carrying out activities, for example earthworks. In such situations, the Council will apply the policies and methods to minimise soil loss and maintain the overall soil resources of the Taranaki region. Their aim is to ensure that Taranaki land and soil resources are sustainably used in the long term. The policies and methods principally focus on promoting and supporting the voluntary adoption of sustainable land management practises with a particular focus on erosion-prone areas – these being the hill country and coastal sand country. The principal methods of implementation are the Taranaki Regional Council's Sustainable Land Management Programme, advice and information services and financial incentives. A limited range of regional rules is currently applied as a back up measure to control potentially significant adverse effects from soil or vegetation disturbance activities. These rules apply regardless of whether the vegetation disturbance is associated with forestry, farming or any other land use. The rules have been targeted to very specific situations and provide certainty to landowners. The Council will continue to consider the application and appropriateness of such rules over the term of this Regional Policy Statement and during the review of its regional plans. The policies and methods build on current approaches to this issue. They have proven to

be successful to date in terms of public acceptance and achievement of desired environmental outcomes and are considered to be the appropriate approach having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

Given the proven success of the current approaches, it is considered appropriate to allow each territorial authority the discretion to include further rules as a backstop.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### **AER ER 1**

*By 2016, increase the area of privately-owned land in the hill country that is sustainably managed (i.e. land used within the land use capability classification) from 85% to 89%.*

##### **AER ER 2**

*Reduce the area of exposed soil on privately-owned land in the coastal sand country.*

#### Sustainable Land Management Programme

The Taranaki Regional Council promotes sustainable land management. The focus is on working with farmers through the use of non-regulatory methods to promote sustainable land management practices.

In relation to soil erosion, the Taranaki Regional Council implements the Sustainable Land Management Programme, providing a property planning service to land owners. Each year, the Council receives requests from land owners to prepare comprehensive farm plans, agroforestry plans, and conservation plans.

Comprehensive farm plans cover all environmental aspects of a farming operation, including land and stock management, while maximizing the productive capability of the property. The plans are based upon a detailed land resource inventory and include an analysis of soils, geology, vegetation, slope, and erosion. Land use and management recommendations promoting the stabilization and protection of the productive capability of the soils within the property are included within each plan. Other issues such as the retirement or enhancement of riparian buffer strips along waterways are also addressed.

Agroforestry plans involve the use of the Agroforestry Estate Model to generate a number of scenarios taking into account land use capability and the nature and extent of forestry in which the land occupier is interested. Conservation plans are prepared for properties with individual site-specific soil or water conservation issues.

As at 30 June 2009, the Taranaki Regional Council had prepared 313 comprehensive farm plans and agroforestry plans, covering 179,182 hectares. The most 'at risk' area in terms of soil erosion occurs predominantly on pasture land

on steep slopes (i.e. Class VIe, VII and VIII land). Fifty-one percent of this 'at risk' area in the hill country is covered by comprehensive or agroforestry plans. There continues to be strong demand for the property planning service and most plan recommendations are being implemented progressively. The Council aims to have 80% of all hill country farms included within the Programme by 2016.

In addition to the property planning service, the Taranaki Regional Council provides a range of other services to plan holders including on-going advice and other assistance, including the provision of soil conservation plants for land stabilization purposes. The Council facilitates the supply of relatively low cost, high quality plants through bulk purchase contracts with nurseries.



## 5.2 MAINTAINING HEALTHY SOILS

### Background to the issue

Soil health refers to the biological, chemical and physical state of the soil and the maintenance of soil ecosystems. Unlike the impact of accelerated erosion on soil, soil health problems may not be immediately evident, but are no less important.

Taranaki is one of the most intensively farmed regions in New Zealand and this places considerable demand upon its soil resources. Maintenance of soil health is fundamental to the environmental and economic well-being of Taranaki. While there are currently few major problems relating to soil health in the region, there is a potential for serious soil health issues such as soil

compaction, nutrient depletion, residual soil contamination, and the excessive use of fertilisers to emerge in the future if sustainable land management practices are not adopted.

Under natural conditions, soil compaction (or soil structural degradation) is rare. Ninety-seven percent of Taranaki's soils have very low to moderate vulnerability to soil compaction. Although Taranaki's soils, particularly its volcanic and organic soils, are generally more resistant to compaction than other soil types, they are not immune to damage – particularly when worked or heavily stocked under wet conditions. Soil compaction increases soil bulk density, reduces aeration and decreases infiltration, which in turn reduces pasture growth and leads to increased nutrient loss through run-off. Compaction is reversible if the source of compaction is removed. The rate of recovery depends on subsequent pasture and stock management, climate and soil type factors.

Soil contains essential mineral elements required by plants or animals. An inevitable consequence of farming is that, at some time in the future, soils will be unable to sustain high levels of production unless those nutrients are replaced. Soil depletion refers to reducing soil nutrients down to a level where their potential to sustain natural and physical resources is adversely affected. Investigations by the Taranaki Regional Council, however, confirm that neither dairy farming nor sheep and beef farming have caused long-term decline in soil nutrient levels in Taranaki soils to date.

Current soil contamination issues relate to the risk of certain contaminants altering the physical, chemical or biological condition of the soil and entering the food chain.<sup>2</sup> Diffuse source soil contamination is a side effect associated primarily with the widespread application of fertilisers and agrichemicals – whether through the primary active ingredient (agrchemical residues) or a by-product (eg, fluoride and cadmium). Investigations in Taranaki show that there are no significant levels of fertiliser or agrichemical residues in Taranaki soils that pose a risk to human or animal health. However, there is potential for adverse effects as a result of inappropriate land management practices applied over time.

Intensive land use and the desire to optimise nutrient levels in the soil to increase the land's productivity have led to the problem of excessive phosphate in most Taranaki soil. This in turn results in run-off from

<sup>2</sup> Soil contamination may occur in other ways such as when chemicals are spilt or disposed of incorrectly, from the use, transportation or storage of hazardous substances and contaminated sites (these sources are addressed separately in section 5.3 below).

land to surface water or leachate into groundwater reducing water quality (this is largely addressed in sections 6.2 and 6.3.

**The significant issues in relation to maintaining healthy soils in Taranaki are:**

**HSO  
ISS 1** Potential effects of intensive land use on soil compaction.

**HSO  
ISS 2** Potential soil nutrient depletion.

**HSO  
ISS 3** Potential residual soil contamination.

## OBJECTIVE

### HSO OBJECTIVE 1

*To maintain soil health in the Taranaki region by maintaining soil nutrients at appropriate levels and avoiding or minimising soil compaction and soil contamination caused by inappropriate land management practices.*

## POLICY

### Sustainable land management practices

#### HSO POLICY 1

*Encourage land management practices that:*

- (a) avoid, remedy or mitigate soil compaction and residual soil contamination, and maintain soil nutrients at appropriate levels;*
- (a) safeguard the life supporting capacity of soils;*
- (b) maintain and optimise soil versatility and productivity; and*
- (c) protect human and animal health.*

#### Explanation of the policy

Policy 1 recognises that, while soil structural degradation, nutrient depletion and residual soil contamination are not of immediate concern in Taranaki, there is a long term risk that irreversible degradation in soil health may occur if appropriate land management practices are not adopted or continued to address soil compaction and residual soil contamination, and to ensure that soil nutrients are maintained at appropriate levels (not too high, not too low).

#### Related policies

Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 5.3** [Hazardous substances]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

**HSO  
METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation that address soil health.

**HSO  
METH 2** Provide **advice and information**, including guidelines to landowners and resource users to:

- (a) promote recognition of soil health issues;
- (b) encourage the adoption of practices and techniques that maintain soil nutrients at appropriate levels and avoid, remedy or mitigate soil compaction and residual soil contamination; and
- (c) encourage the use of industry recognised guidelines, New Zealand Standards or codes of practice and other relevant industry guidelines that promote sustainable soil management, such as: *NZS8409: 2004 Management of Agrichemicals* (developed by NZ Agrichemical EducationTrust and published by Standards New Zealand), and the *Code of Practice for Nutrient Management 2007* developed by FertResearch.

**HSO  
METH 3** **Advocate**, as appropriate:

- (a) to industry that they reduce or avoid the use of those elements in agricultural compounds that have the potential to cause residual soil contamination;
- (b) to industry that they establish or continue to revise standards in relation to the use of agrichemicals, fertilisers, or other agricultural compounds;
- (c) to the farming community that they incorporate soil health and nutrient budgeting within their on-farm environmental management systems; and
- (d) to government departments or agencies that they introduce, or amend, regulations in relation to the importation of or manufacturing standards associated with the use of agrichemicals, fertilisers, or other agricultural compounds as they relate to soil health issues.

**HSO  
METH 4** **Monitor and gather information** on the state of soil health, pressures on soil health, and management responses to soil health issues.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following method:

**HSO METH 5 Control**, through appropriate provisions in district plans, or conditions on resource consents, land use for the purpose of preventing or mitigating any adverse effects of the use of hazardous substances where such control is necessary and appropriate to achieve the purpose of the Act.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for soil health issues in the Taranaki region. Their aim is to increase awareness of soil health issues and promote sustainable land management practices that minimise the risk of any long-term degradation of soil health in Taranaki.

Given that there are no immediate soil health issues in the Taranaki region, the policies and methods focus on non-regulatory methods such as information and advocacy. Regular monitoring will provide information on any changes in soil health status or trends. The policies and methods build on current approaches to this issue and their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs have been appropriate to date.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### HSO ER 1

*No significant adverse change in the soil structure of land in the Taranaki region.*

##### HSO ER 2

*Nutrient levels of soils on land in the Taranaki region are maintained at appropriate levels.*

##### HSO ER 3

*No significant adverse increase in residual contaminant levels in soils on land in the Taranaki region.*

### 5.3 MANAGING THE EFFECTS OF HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES AND CONTAMINATED SITES

#### Background to the issue

A hazardous substance is “...any substance with one or more of the following intrinsic properties, explosiveness, flammability, a capacity to oxidise,

corrosiveness, toxicity (including chronic toxicity) and ecotoxicity with or without bioaccumulation...”.<sup>3</sup>

Contaminated land means “land of one of the following kinds:

- (a) if there is an applicable national environmental standard on contaminants in soil, the land is more contaminated than the standard allows; or
- (b) if there is no applicable national environmental standard on contaminants in soil, the land has a hazardous substance in or on it that:
  - (i) has significant adverse effects on the environment; or
  - (ii) is reasonably likely to have significant adverse effects on the environment. “<sup>4</sup>

Hazardous substances are a common part of our lives. However, if they are stored, used, handled or transported without proper care and concern for safety, they may adversely affect both the environment and public health. Adverse effects caused by the unintentional or deliberate release of hazardous substances into the environment may be short or long term, immediate or delayed. Use of hazardous substances can also produce hazardous waste. Hazardous waste is predominantly generated during manufacturing processes (e.g. timber preservatives) and, to a lesser extent, from domestic households (e.g. household bleaches, solvents).

Contaminated sites are sites at which hazardous substances are present in concentrations above naturally occurring local background levels and are likely to pose an immediate or long-term risk to the environment, or human health, or both. In the past, some hazardous substances management practices associated with the storage, use or disposal of hazardous substances have resulted in soil on some sites becoming contaminated to the extent that the site is potentially unsuitable for current or subsequent uses. The contamination can also enter the environment as a surface water, groundwater or air discharge posing a much wider risk to both public health and the environment, and may affect the economy of the region through damage to property and/or damage to market access for export produce. In addition, management costs may be imposed upon the community through the abandonment of contaminated sites and the subsequent need to remediate ‘orphaned’ contaminated sites. Site remediation (clean up) can be expensive, and effective management means matching target clean up levels to likely land uses.

<sup>3</sup> As defined in the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996.

<sup>4</sup> As defined in the Resource Management Act 1991.



The level of risk from contaminated sites is not uniform for all land uses e.g. a site may be quite safe to use for industrial purposes, but unsafe for food crops or where young children might play in dirt. Examples of land uses that could result in site contamination include landfills, engineering workshops, timber treatment sites, railway yards, gasworks and drycleaners.

Under the Resource Management Act, the function of regional councils is “...the investigation of land for the purposes of identifying and monitoring contaminated land”, while the function of territorial authorities is “...the prevention or mitigation of any adverse effects of the development, subdivision, or use of contaminated land”.

The Taranaki Regional Council has investigated and compiled a database of all sites in Taranaki that might contain some contamination from historical or current land use. These investigations confirm (to the extent of information known to the Council) that there are now no contaminated sites which pose a risk to human health or the environment in the Taranaki region. There are a small number of sites that are contaminated above guidelines but which are being managed to prevent environmental or health effects. However, it is recognised that new information may identify new sites that may need to be investigated and remedial action considered. Furthermore, a change in land use for a particular site (for example from industrial to residential) may mean stricter controls are appropriate and may necessitate further investigation and/or remedial action. There is also the possibility that the introduction of new guidelines or a national environmental standard for contaminated land may affect the status of a particular site.

**The significant issues with managing the effects of hazardous substances and contaminated sites in Taranaki are:**

**HZC  
ISS 1**      **Avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse environmental effects associated with the storage, use, transportation and disposal of hazardous substances.**

**HZC  
ISS 2**      **Providing for the effective management, use and remediation of contaminated sites.**

## **OBJECTIVE**

### **HZC OBJECTIVE 1**

**To avoid, remedy, or mitigate adverse environmental effects arising from the storage, use, transportation and disposal of hazardous substances in the Taranaki region, including adverse environmental effects arising from existing contaminated sites.**

## **POLICIES**

### **Promoting alternatives to hazardous substances**

#### **HZC POLICY 1**

*The use of alternatives to hazardous substances will be promoted where it is appropriate, efficient and cost-effective to do so.*

### **Adverse effects arising from the storage, use and transportation of hazardous substances**

#### **HZC POLICY 2**

*Adverse and unintended effects on the environment arising from the storage, use and transportation of hazardous substances will be reduced to the lowest practicable level.*

### **Disposal of hazardous substances**

#### **HZC POLICY 3**

*Adverse and unintended effects on the environment arising from the disposal of hazardous substances will be avoided or mitigated by:*

- (a) *encouraging greater levels of substitution, re-use, recovery and recycling of hazardous substances where practicable;*
- (b) *promoting disposal of hazardous substances in purpose built disposal facilities when appropriate; and*
- (c) *providing for the co-disposal of hazardous substances to a landfill, subject to that disposal being undertaken in a manner that avoids or mitigates significant adverse environmental effects.*

### **Management of contaminated sites**

#### **HZC POLICY 4**

*All known and potentially contaminated sites in the Taranaki region will be identified and managed in a manner that:*

- (a) *avoids or mitigates potential adverse environmental effects;*
- (b) *mitigates or remedies actual adverse environmental effect; and*
- (c) *avoids or mitigates potential adverse effects on human health.*

### **Priority action**

#### **HZC POLICY 5**

*Priority of management action will be determined by:*

- (a) *the type of contaminants;*
- (b) *the degree of contamination;*
- (c) *the availability and practicality of appropriate technology for management including recognition of technical and financial constraints;*
- (d) *existing and likely future uses of the site;*
- (e) *surrounding land uses;*
- (f) *national standards, guidelines, or both; and*

- (g) *the potential for adverse environmental and public health effects including the potential for offsite or downstream effects.*

#### Avoiding new contaminated sites

##### **HZC POLICY 6**

*Discharges of hazardous substances to land shall be regulated and unauthorised discharges shall be remediated to avoid the creation of new contaminated sites in the region.*

#### Explanation of the policies

Hazardous substances, while a common part of our lives may adversely affect both the environment and public health if not stored, used, handled, transported, or disposed of with proper care and concern. Accordingly, Policy 1 seeks to promote the use of alternatives to hazardous substances where practicable to reduce or avoid adverse environmental effects associated with the storage, use, handling or transportation of hazardous substances.

Policy 2 seeks that hazardous substances be used, stored and transported in a manner designed to reduce or avoid adverse environmental effects from unintentional releases. Where significant and unintended effects do occur they will be remedied or mitigated. 'Lowest practicable level' takes into account statutory requirements, the effectiveness and efficiency of alternative controls, and the sensitivity of receiving environments.

The Resource Management Act is concerned only with the discharge of contaminants (including hazardous substances) into the environment. Other elements of the life cycle of hazardous substances lie outside the scope of the RMA. The Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act (HASNO) addresses the management of hazardous substances throughout their life cycle. Therefore if a comprehensive, integrated and efficient management regime for hazardous substances is considered appropriate then it is open to the Council to consider a number of methods to implement Policy 2 including taking up inspection and enforcement functions that are available to but not mandatory for regional councils under HASNO.

Policy 3 seeks that adverse and unintended effects on the environment arising from the disposal of hazardous substances be avoided or mitigated. Policy 3 recognises that disposal of hazardous substances to a landfill is appropriate in certain (but not all) circumstances and is subject to disposal being undertaken: in accordance with consent conditions and recognised guidelines; following pre-treatment to satisfactory standards; and in accordance with

specific landfill management plans. Policy 3 also recognises that, as a general principle, co-disposal of hazardous substances to a landfill should be regarded as the option of last resort, after the minimisation of waste generation and the implementation of recycling and re-use.

Adoption of co-disposal of hazardous wastes does not imply uncontrolled receipt of waste. The matters set out in Policy 3 will ensure that, on every occasion, an appropriate level of waste management is exercised to avoid or mitigate significant adverse effects associated with that disposal.

Policy 4 recognises that while adverse effects associated with contaminated sites are largely addressed in Taranaki, there may be occasions, over time, for new potentially contaminated sites to be identified or proposed changes in land use of existing sites that increase risks of adverse effects. In such cases, these sites will be investigated, and remedial or mitigation action taken to address potential adverse environmental effects. The degree of risk and the need to take action may create significant economic penalties without offsetting any environmental benefits.

In prioritising remedial and mitigation action to be taken (e.g. site rehabilitation) for the management of contaminated sites, the matters listed in Policy 5 will be considered.

Policy 6 ensures that no new contaminated sites are created in Taranaki, as a liability for current or future generations.

#### Related policies

Policy 1 of **Section 5.2** [Soil health]; Policies 3 and 4 of **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; Policy 1 of **Section 7.1** [Air quality]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; Policy 1 of **Section 12** [Waste management]; Policy 2 of **Section 15.2** [Physical infrastructure of regional significance].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

**HZC METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation addressing the discharges of contaminants to the environment, including hazardous substances, and addressing on-going contamination arising from past discharges.

**HZC METH 2** Apply **regional rules** to regulate the discharge of hazardous substances.

HZA METH 3	Include provisions in the <b>Regional Waste Strategy for Taranaki</b> setting out management actions and targets for the substitution, re-use, recovery and/or recycling of hazardous substances.
HZA METH 4	Consider, in conjunction with the territorial authorities of the region, the provision of a <b>collection and/or reception service</b> for redundant hazardous waste.
HZA METH 5	Include provisions in the <b>Regional Waste Strategy for Taranaki</b> setting out management actions and targets for the substitution, re-use, recovery and/or recycling of hazardous substances.
HZA METH 6	<b>Identify, investigate, monitor and gather information</b> on all known or potentially contaminated sites and their management.
HZA METH 7	Maintain a <b>register of selected land uses</b> which contains all sites known to the Council where it is considered there has been the potential for contamination and include in the register details of all investigations and assessments carried out for each site and the categories of each site according to Ministry for the Environment guidelines. Such a register will be updated and accessible to territorial authorities to assist in their land management functions.
HZA METH 8	Provide <b>advice and information</b> to landowners, resource users and the public on alternatives to the use of hazardous substances and the recovery of hazardous substances.
HZA METH 9	Advocate as appropriate to <b>manufacturers and suppliers</b> of agrichemicals, fertilisers and other agricultural compounds, the strengthening of the <b>education and information provision</b> role they play with a view to minimising the likelihood and potential effects on the environment of the application and use of agrichemicals, fertilisers and agricultural compounds.
HZA METH 10	<b>Advocate</b> to central government the establishment of a nationally accessible <b>intractable waste treatment and disposal service</b> .

HZA METH 11	Consider exercising the optional <b>inspection and enforcement</b> role available to regional councils under Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996.
----------------	---

**Management responsibilities - storage, use, disposal or transportation of hazardous substances**

In accordance with section 62(1)(i)(ii) of the Resource Management Act, the three **territorial authorities** of the region will be responsible for specifying objectives, policies and methods for the control of the use of land to prevent or mitigate the adverse effects of the storage, use, disposal or transportation of hazardous substances except where the control of the use of land relates to the Taranaki Regional Council's functions under the Act regarding:

- the coastal marine area; and
- the beds of rivers, lakes and other waterbodies.

The Taranaki Regional Council is responsible for managing discharges of hazardous substances where they are discharged to land, air or water.

**Territorial authorities** will consider the following method:

HZA METH 12	Include provisions in <b>district plans</b> for the control of the use of land to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of the storage, use, disposal or transportation of hazardous substances.
----------------	--

**Territorial authorities** may also wish to consider the following methods:

HZA METH 13	Adopt appropriate <b>trade waste bylaws</b> to control the discharge of hazardous substances into the municipal sewerage systems.
HZA METH 14	Include in <b>building consents</b> under the Building Act 2004, conditions relating to the use and storage of hazardous substances.
HZA METH 15	Consider, in the preparation of <b>district land transport programmes</b> , methods to prevent or mitigate any adverse effects of the transportation of hazardous substances.
HZA METH 16	Consider, in the preparation of district plans, provisions for the <b>management</b> of contaminated or potentially contaminated land in accordance with information gathered from investigations, monitoring, or other sources including those identified

through Method 6.

#### **Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods**

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for the management of hazardous substances and contaminated sites.

While some regional rules apply as a backstop to controlling significant adverse effects associated with hazardous substances and contaminated sites, the policies and methods principally focus on working with territorial authorities (which are the regulatory and consent granting authorities responsible for controlling the use of land for the prevention or mitigation of any adverse effects of the storage, use, disposal or transportation of hazardous substances) to implement a regional-wide approach to the management of hazardous substances use and disposal.

The policies and methods build on current approaches to this issue. They have proved to be effective to date in terms of promoting integrated management and achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### **Environmental results anticipated**

##### **HZC ER 1**

*A reduction in the incidence and magnitude of adverse environmental effects arising from the use, storage, transportation and disposal of hazardous substances.*

##### **HZC ER 2**

*Reduced volumes of hazardous waste requiring disposal.*

##### **HZC ER 3**

*All known high-risk contaminated sites will be effectively managed.*

## 6. Fresh water

---

This section identifies resource management issues of regional significance that primarily affect Taranaki's fresh water (both surface and groundwater) resources. These issues are grouped under the headings of:

- sustainable allocation of surface water resources
- maintaining and enhancing the quality of water in our rivers, streams, lakes, and wetlands
- maintaining groundwater flows and quality at sustainable levels
- protecting the natural character of our wetlands
- managing land drainage and other diversions of water
- managing effects associated with the use of river and lake beds
- maintaining and enhancing public access to and along rivers and lakes.

### 6.1 SUSTAINABLE ALLOCATION OF SURFACE WATER RESOURCES

#### Background to the issue

There are 217 parent catchments in Taranaki and 530 named rivers and streams. River flows are typically high in winter with low flows occurring in summer. River levels rise rapidly in high rainfall events, but recede steadily once rain has ceased. Although much reduced in size and numbers, wetlands also perform important hydrological functions by storing water and regulating river flows during heavy rain, and offsetting low flows during dry periods.

Taranaki's surface water resources are extensively used and highly valued. There is a wide range of uses – from agriculture and industry to town water supplies, hydro-electric power generation and recreation. Some uses such as hydro-electric power generation take, divert and use water before returning it to the river system. Such uses provide significant and essential economic and social benefits to people and communities in Taranaki and to the national economy. However, if not effectively managed, the taking, use, damming and diversion (including drainage) of water may reduce surface water flows, quantities and levels resulting in adverse effects on natural character, aquatic life, in-stream values or the cultural and spiritual relationships of Māori to water, and lead to conflict between competing uses for surface water. Abstraction of water may also reduce the capacity of the water body to assimilate wastes and therefore have an influence on water quality.

Compared with other parts of New Zealand there are relatively few significant water use pressures on water

bodies in Taranaki with overall abstraction volumes being low compared to both median river flows (flow recorded 50% of the time) and mean (average) annual low flows. The largest 25 river catchments in the region, which account for over 80% of the region's water flow, have only 5% of their median flow and 13% of their mean annual low flow allocated.

However, at a catchment level, some concerns do exist. Catchments in Taranaki are relatively small and increasing demand mean that some river catchments are now fully allocated or almost fully allocated during low flows and there is a need to prioritise water allocation between different water uses (such as pasture irrigation and urban water supply) and instream uses (such as aesthetic and scenic values and other in-stream needs). Where there is competition for the use of limited water resources, some water uses will need to be given priority because of the strategic nature of their businesses or operations and wider benefits to the community and to the region. Low flow source areas have also been reduced as a result of land drainage and development leading over time to a reduction in the median and low flows of streams. The cumulative loss of wetlands has severely reduced the ability of catchments to moderate flood flows and maintain low flows.

Maintenance of the natural character and life-supporting capacity of fresh water is also important not only in terms of maintaining ecological and biodiversity values but also in terms of protecting amenity, landscape, cultural, recreational and commercial values associated with fresh water. The natural character of rivers, streams and lakes comprises a range of qualities and features created by nature as distinct from manmade constructions. These may include for example qualities and features associated with water flows and levels, water quality, the movement of water through rapids, riffles, runs and pools, features associated with river channels and banks and their vegetation cover as well as aquatic life and ecosystems associated with rivers, streams and lakes. The natural character of Taranaki's rivers, streams and lakes and their margins provide the basis for many of the landscape, amenity and ecosystem values associated with waterbodies in the region, including habitat for native birds and other riverine species and the scenic backdrop for recreational activities. Some have historic, scientific and educational significance or value. Adverse effects on the natural character and amenity values of fresh water can arise from the taking and use of surface water and groundwater, discharges of contaminants to land and water, the placement of structures, the removal of sand and gravel, channel realignment, reclamation and land drainage. This section deals only

with the natural character and life supporting capacity of waterbodies and their margins to the extent that these matters are affected by the taking and use or allocation of surface waters. Other effects on the natural character of rivers and lakes and their margins are addressed in other sections of the Statement.

To promote the sustainable allocation of surface water, which includes maintaining the natural character and life-supporting capacity of fresh water, levels of protection and use and associated values vary between and within catchments. For some water bodies that have high quality or high value environments there will be a need to retain or enhance water levels and flows, while in other waterbodies reduced flows might be appropriate to meet the needs of particular water users.

**The significant issues in relation to the sustainable allocation of surface water resources are:**

<b>WAL ISS 1</b>	<b>Providing for a range of water uses while avoiding, remedying or mitigating any adverse effects on the environment.</b>
<b>WAL ISS 2</b>	<b>Maintaining the natural character and life-supporting capacity of Taranaki water bodies.</b>
<b>WAL ISS 3</b>	<b>Determining allocation priorities for water where there are competing or conflicting demands for water through mechanisms available under the RMA.</b>
<b>WAL ISS 4</b>	<b>Providing for regional variations in water levels and flows.</b>

## **OBJECTIVES**

### **WAL OBJECTIVE 1**

***To sustainably manage the taking, use, damming or diversion of fresh water in the Taranaki region to enable people and communities to meet their needs for water while safeguarding the life-supporting capacity of water and related ecosystems and avoiding, remedying or mitigating any adverse effects on the environment arising from that use.***

### **WAL OBJECTIVE 2**

***To protect the natural character of water bodies from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.***

## **POLICIES**

**Making water available for use**

### **WAL POLICY 1**

*Subject to Policies 2 to 5 below, surface water will be made available for the existing and reasonably foreseeable future needs of domestic and community supplies, agricultural, industrial, hydroelectric power generation and other uses of water to enable people*

*and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural wellbeing.*

*Surface water allocations will be made having regard to the ability of water users to demonstrate:*

- (a) the need for the volumes of water sought;*
- (b) the need to use water efficiently and with a minimum of waste;*
- (c) what alternative sources of water or water collection or storage methods have been considered;*
- (d) whether there is a need to install systems to accurately measure the volumes of water abstracted and to reduce or suspend abstractions; and*
- (e) that any adverse environmental effects from the taking, use, damming or diversion of water will be avoided, remedied or mitigated as far as practicable in accordance with other policies of this Policy Statement or regional plans and the requirements of the RMA.*

## **Regional variations in water levels and flows**

### **WAL POLICY 2**

*Natural water levels and flows:*

- (a) will be maintained and/or enhanced as far as practicable in all those water bodies, or parts of them, identified as having high quality or high value for their natural character and in-stream values; however.*
- (b) may be reduced in other water bodies to provide for the needs of water users provided that any reductions in water levels and flows are minimised, that as far as practicable, any adverse effects on natural character and in-stream values are avoided, remedied or mitigated and the life-supporting capacity is safeguarded.*

## **Maintaining in-stream values and life-supporting capacity**

### **WAL POLICY 3**

*The in-stream values and life supporting capacity of water bodies will be maintained, and the natural character of rivers, streams, and lakes and their margins protected from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.*

*Matters to be considered in determining the quantities, levels or flow of water necessary to maintain instream values and life supporting capacity and to protect natural character will include:*

- (a) the natural character, ecological and amenity values associated with the water body and its margin, including indigenous biodiversity values, fishery values and the habitat of trout;*
- (b) the relationship of tangata whenua with the water body;*
- (c) the importance of the water body to meet existing or reasonably foreseeable needs for domestic*

- and community water supplies, agricultural, industrial, hydroelectric power generation and other uses;
- (d) the effects of proposed water levels and flows on water quality and the assimilative capacity of the waterbody;
  - (e) the hydrological characteristics of the catchment including flow variability, flow recession characteristics, the relationship to groundwater recharge, and the cumulative effects of land use and catchment development on stream hydrology;
  - (f) the significance of flows and groundwater recharge to the maintenance or enhancement of downstream flows;
  - (g) the ability to abstract from the lower reaches of catchments to safeguard instream values of upper reaches where this will not adversely affect the special value of estuaries;
  - (h) the significance of any historic heritage values associated with the water body; and
  - (i) the cumulative effects of existing takes;
  - (j) the extent to which any adverse effects of the taking, use, damming or diversion of water can be avoided, remedied or mitigate; and
  - (k) the regional and national benefits to be derived from the allocation of water resources.

#### Restoration of in-stream values

##### **WAL POLICY 4**

*Subject to Policies 2 and 3 above, where the life-supporting capacity of water bodies or parts of them has already been degraded as a result of the taking, use, damming or diversion of water, the restoration of the life-supporting capacity of these water bodies will be promoted.*

#### Rights of existing water permit holders

##### **WAL POLICY 5**

*The Council will recognise the rights of existing water permit holders to exercise their entitlement to take and use water throughout the term of their resource consent, and will not allow any greater derogation from those rights by grant of subsequent resource consents than is allowed by law.*

#### Allocation priority for the taking and use of water

##### **WAL POLICY 6**

*Subject to the requirements of Part 2 of the RMA allocation of surface water will generally be on a "first-come, first-served" basis but will take into account the reasonable needs of water users including consent applicants, reasonably foreseeable future needs of current or potential water users, and the efficiency of the proposed use.*

*Where there is or is likely to be competition for the use of water, allocation decisions will be made having particular regard to the following:*

- (a) *reasonably foreseeable future requirements for domestic and community water supply needs, stock drinking water, and fire fighting;*
- (b) *the degree of national, regional or community benefit from the taking and use of water as distinct from individual benefit;*
- (c) *the value of investments made by existing consent holders;*
- (d) *the extent to which water users have established a reasonable need for the rates and volumes sought; and*
- (e) *the relative efficiency (including allocative, productive and technical efficiency) of the proposed use of the resource as compared to existing and reasonably foreseeable uses of the resource.*

#### Explanation of the policies

Policy 1 recognises and provides for the existing and reasonably foreseeable future needs of domestic and community supplies, agricultural, industrial, hydroelectric power generation and other uses of water. It recognises the social and economic benefits that arise from the use of water. Although Taranaki has high average rainfall and surface water flows, water shortages and conflicts may still occur in some catchments. To reduce any conflicts of use and increase water availability to a range of consumptive and non-consumptive uses, both now and in the future, resource users will be encouraged to adopt measures that conserve and make the most efficient use of water that they abstract. Policy 1 requires that any adverse effects from the taking, use, damming or diversion of water are to be avoided, remedied or mitigated as far as practicable. This recognises that it may not always be possible or necessary to completely avoid, remedy or mitigate all adverse effects from the taking, use, damming or diversion of water. However, avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse environmental effects as far as practicable does not necessarily mean that any use and development of resources that avoids, remedies or mitigates adverse environmental effects as far as practicable, will be acceptable - adverse environmental effects must be managed in a way that gives effect to the Act's sustainable management purpose. Any adverse environmental effects from the taking, use, damming or diversion of water are required to be avoided, remedied or mitigated in accordance with other policies in the Regional Policy Statement or regional plans. Some uses of water such as hydroelectric power generation, take, dam or divert water and then return it to the river system after use. In considering the environmental effects of such uses regard will be had to matters such as the length of river affected by the taking, damming or diversion of water before it is returned, the frequency, duration and timing of the taking, or diversion and the state of the water

returned. The availability and allocation of fresh water for use is subject to Policies 2 to 5.

Policy 2 recognises that there are different values associated with different water bodies throughout the region. Some are recognised as having high natural, ecological, cultural or other value and these are identified in Appendix I. It also recognises that consumptive use requirements differ throughout the region. Through this policy, the Taranaki Regional Council seeks to retain and/or enhance water levels and flows in all those river and stream catchments or parts of them recognised as having high natural, ecological and amenity values such as are found in the Stony (Hangatahua) River catchment, Maketawa Stream catchment, and the Manganui River catchment (refer Appendix I). Policy 2 recognises that it will not always be possible to maintain and enhance water levels and flows in rivers or streams with high natural, ecological and amenity values, especially if water is taken and used from these waterbodies. This is why the policy refers to water levels and flows being maintained and/or enhanced as far as practicable. Policy 2 refers to waterbodies or parts of them recognised as having high natural character and instream values. These are the natural, ecological and amenity values associated with these waterbodies. The natural character and instream values present in catchments with high natural, ecological and amenity values are summarised in Appendix I. The values listed are to be found in these catchments but may not be found along all rivers and streams within the catchments. However effects on values of waterbodies in one part of a catchment can have effects on the same values of waterbodies in another part of the catchment. Policy 2 also provides for reduced flows in other waterbodies. Where flows are reduced, Policy 2 seeks to ensure that adverse effects on in-stream values are avoided, remedied or mitigated as far as practicable and the life-supporting capacity is safeguarded. However, avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse environmental effects as far as practicable does not necessarily mean that any use and development of resources that avoids, remedies or mitigates adverse environmental effects as far as practicable, will be acceptable - adverse environmental effects must be managed in a way that gives effect to the Act's sustainable management purpose.

The quantity of water that may be taken or which should be set aside to maintain the natural character and life-supporting capacity of water will depend upon a number of values and characteristics of the water body. Policy 3 identifies those matters to be considered in the development and consideration of policies, plans or resource consent applications to take, use, dam or divert water.

Policy 4 recognises that some catchments, or parts of a catchment, do not meet their threshold life supporting capacities due to the presence of long-standing abstractions or diversions. Under Policy 4, where the life supporting capacity of a water body has been exceeded, the Council will therefore seek to promote measures that will contribute to the restoration of the life supporting capacity of these water bodies having regard to those matters set out in Policies 2 and 3.

Policy 5 has been adopted by the Council to recognise the principle of non-derogation from the grant of rights and entitlements of existing consent holders, but is not intended to extend the principle beyond what has been, or may be established in law. However variations or limitations may be imposed on the exercise of the consent in situations provided for in the Act. These situations include where a regional plan includes rules relating to maximum or minimum levels or flows or rates of use of water; where a resource consent is changed because information made available to a consent authority by the applicant contained inaccuracies which materially influenced the decision to grant consent and where a regional council exercises its powers to apportion water where there is a serious temporary shortage of water.

The exercise of resource consents may also be varied from time to time as a result of a review of the conditions of the consent if this is provided for in the consent itself or in other circumstances, including where new rules are introduced into a Plan setting different minimum flows or rates of take, use or diversion.

The Act provides that the Council may through rules in a regional plan allocate water among competing types of water use activities, in anticipation of the expiry of existing consents.

Policy 6 sets out the approach to be taken to determine allocation priorities for the use of water. Subject to Part 2 of the Act the Taranaki Regional Council will generally allocate water on a 'first-come, first-served' basis. However, where there is or is likely to be competition for the use of water the Council will need to 'prioritise' water allocation among competing uses.

Policy 6 establishes that allocations for the taking and use of surface water are made subject to the requirements of Part 2 of the Act including the need to safeguard the life-supporting capacity of water and protect instream uses and values. This will be done in accordance with other policies in the Regional Policy Statement and Plans and the requirements of the RMA. Instream uses and values include the range of uses and values derived from the waterbody itself



including ecological, intrinsic and amenity values, cultural and spiritual values and natural character values. Effects on these values will need to be avoided, remedied or mitigated in accordance with the Act or this Regional Policy Statement for example through appropriate ecological or environmental flows, flow sharing, allocation caps and other measures. Policy 6 then sets out those matters that the Council will have particular regard to when determining water allocation priorities. The matters listed are not in order of priority. First is the need to ensure water is available to meet reasonable domestic needs and community water supply needs, stock drinking water requirements (for cattle, pig, poultry and other livestock) and fire fighting purposes. Second is the degree of national, regional or community benefit to be derived from the taking and use of water as distinct from individual benefits from the use. Third, the value of investments that existing consent holders have made in relation to the taking and use of water will be considered in deciding on allocation priorities. Fourth is the need for water users to establish a reasonable need for the rates and volumes sought. Finally, the Council will consider the relative efficiency of the proposed use of the resource compared to existing and reasonably foreseeable uses of the resource. This may include considerations of: good industry practice in the taking and use of water; the extent to which water can be used with a minimum of waste; the ability of water users to reuse, recycle or harvest water or to make it available to the river system after use, for reallocation to other users, the benefits to be derived from the use of water for renewable energy generation and any other relevant aspects of efficiency.

In making decisions on the allocation of water under this Policy, some water users will need to be given priority because they provide important economic, social or health and safety benefits to the community, to the region or to New Zealand or because of the strategic nature of their business or operations.

The Council recognises that needs and demands for water may change into the future. The Council therefore intends through Policy 6 to ensure that its approach to water allocation is sufficiently adaptive and flexible to respond to changing water demands and community expectations in relation to water use.

The Act also enables the Council to allocate water to different types of activities through rules in a regional plan. In the event that the Council gives effect to this Policy in a Plan the allocations made by the Plan will reserve water for the activity or activities identified in the Plan. Applications for resource consent would then be made for water within the particular categories and applications considered on a “first-come-first-served” basis. Where rules limit rates of use, the Council may in appropriate circumstances use its powers under

section 128(1) (b) of the Act to review the rates and volume of take.

The Council considers that it is necessary to manage the allocation of water in this way to ensure that water continues to be made available to meet the future needs of water users and provides the best opportunities for people and communities to provide for their economic, social and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety.

The intent of part (b) of the policy is to focus on the benefits to be derived from water use rather than the ownership of water use assets or infrastructure. Some privately owned businesses or activities will provide a high degree of community-wide or regional benefit as well as private or individual benefit to owners or shareholders. Under Policy 6(b) a use of water that provides a high degree of national, regional or community benefit, even if privately owned, could be expected to have priority over a use of water whose benefits are more of an individual nature. However, other uses of water that provide a high degree of community benefit may have priority over privately owned uses notwithstanding the community benefits that accrue from the private use, because of the greater degree or spread of community benefits. Policy 6(b) provides for the degree of national, regional, community, individual, public and private benefits to be weighed up in the water allocation process.

#### Related policies

Policy 1 of **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; all the policies in **Section 6.4** [Wetlands], **Section 6.5** [Land drainage and associated diversions], **Section 6.6** [Use of river and lake beds]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; all the policies in **Section 10.1** [Outstanding natural features and landscapes], all policies in **Section 14** (Energy), **Section 15.3** [Regionally significant infrastructure], and **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- WAL METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies, rules and other methods of implementation to ensure that any adverse effects of the taking and use of surface water are avoided, remedied, or mitigated as far as practicable, that the in-stream values and life-supporting capacity of water bodies are maintained, and their natural character protected from inappropriate development, that water levels or flows in rivers and streams or parts of them that have high natural character, ecological and amenity values are

maintained and enhanced, and that where these values have been significantly degraded by past use provision be made to enable adverse effects to be avoided, remedied or mitigated as far as practicable.

- WAL METH 2** When **reviewing the Regional Fresh Water Plan for Taranaki (2001)**, consider the inclusion of provisions relating to water allocation matters as follows:
- (a) setting allocatable volumes and defining full allocation in terms of location, time or flow;
  - (b) prioritising between different classes of use;
  - (c) expressly specifying or limiting exclusivity;
  - (d) limiting the rates and/or volumes of water take to balance the reasonably foreseeable needs of the applicant against reasonably foreseeable future needs and to encourage the most efficient use of the resource;
  - (e) relating abstraction volumes and rates more closely to needs and efficient use; and
  - (f) providing for flow variability and clear flow sharing rules and have regard to the costs and benefits, practicability and appropriateness of such provisions.

- WAL METH 3** **Apply the resource consent** process to assist the Council in the implementation of its water allocation policies.

- WAL METH 4** Apply **regional rules** that:
- (a) allow, regulate or prohibit taking and using surface water; and
  - (b) protect the natural character and in-stream values of the Stony (Hangatahua) River catchment, and parts of the Maketawa Stream catchment and parts of the Manganui River catchment as defined in Policy 6.1.1 of the Regional Fresh Water Plan for Taranaki 2001, as far as possible in their natural state.

- WAL METH 5** Gather and provide **technical advice and information** to promote the conservation and efficiency of use of surface water, including the preparation of guidelines on water allocation and availability and the provision of information on flow statistics.

- WAL METH 6** Provide **advice and information including guidelines** to landowners, resource users and the public to:

- (a) generally promote awareness of the principles and practices for water conservation, recycling, and efficient use;
- (b) encourage water harvesting and the use of storage or impoundments to store water at times of high water flow;
- (c) promote the use of alternative sources of water, including groundwater or rainwater, to maintain or enhance surface water levels and flows; and
- (d) encourage the adoption of water saving practices, the use of water saving devices and water metering, and the use of more efficient plant or manufacturing processes.

- WAL METH 7** **Promote** the protection and planting of **riparian margins** as a means of mitigating the adverse effects of the taking and use of water.

- WAL METH 8** **Monitor and gather information** on the state of surface water flow and levels, pressures on water flows and levels, and responses to management.

- WAL METH 9** **Support and encourage research** to understand protection of life supporting capacity of Taranaki rivers and lakes.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following method:

- WAL METH 10** In preparing, implementing and administering **district plans** and **resource consents**, assess, as appropriate, the effects of land use and development and subdivision on surface water and provide for any adverse effects to be avoided, remedied or mitigated.

#### **Principal reasons for adopting the objectives, policies and methods**

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for managing surface water quantities and flows in the region. Their aim is to provide for the many uses of water and to balance competing demands for that water while also maintaining and where appropriate restoring or enhancing instream values and the life-supporting capacity of waterbodies and associated natural character, ecological and amenity values. Through the implementation of regional plans and, in particular the use of regional rules, the Taranaki Regional Council can provide for the taking, use, damming and diversion of surface water while managing any adverse effects.

Adverse effects under Method 1 are to be avoided, remedied or mitigated as far as practicable. This recognises that it may not always be possible to completely avoid, remedy or mitigate all adverse effects. However, avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse environmental effects as far as practicable does not necessarily mean that any use and development of resources that avoids, remedies or mitigates adverse environmental effects as far as practicable, will be acceptable - adverse environmental effects must be managed in a way that gives effect to the Act's sustainable management purpose. The policies and methods also recognise different values associated with different water bodies and take into account the need to maintain and/or enhance water levels and flows as far as practicable in rivers and streams recognised as having high natural, ecological, cultural or other values. The needs of water users and priority allocations to surface water are also recognised. This reflects the need to enable people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety. High priority water users may include domestic or community water supplies, water supplies associated with schools or other public institutions, stock drinking water requirements or water supplies critical to industrial users of regional or national importance. A regional plan with more detailed methods including rules is the appropriate mechanism for dealing with these issues. The methods focus on a combination of regulatory tools such as regional plans and regional rules, technical advice and information and guidelines.

Method 2 is to signal that in the review of the current Regional Fresh Water Plan, the Council will consider the matters listed. These matters include consideration of whether it is appropriate, necessary or desirable for resource management purposes to prioritise allocations between different classes of use such as for industrial or community water supplies or to expressly specify exclusive use of water resources for particular water users or to limit such exclusivity. The possible inclusion of water allocation provisions in a Regional Fresh Water Plan under Method 2 will need to recognise water uses with regional or national benefits. The matters listed in Method 2 if considered appropriate or necessary, may assist in providing greater certainty and more efficient and effective water resources management in situations where there are competing and conflicting demands for water or where demands for water are or are likely to exceed availability.

Method 3 has been adopted to assist the Council in implementing its water allocation policies, for example via the duration, allocated rates and/or volumes, and conditions of water permits.

Method 4 has been adopted to allow, regulate or prohibit the taking and use of surface water in the river and stream catchments listed to protect the natural character and instream values present in those catchments as far as possible in their natural state. In line with Policy 2, Method 4 is to protect the high quality or high value natural, ecological and amenity values present in these catchments. These values are summarised in Appendix 1. The values listed can be found in these catchments but may not be present all parts of the catchments.

The policies and methods build on current approaches to this issue. They have proved to be successful to date in terms of achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### **Environmental results anticipated**

##### **WAL ER 1**

*Protection of the aquatic environment and in-stream values of surface water and the maintenance or enhancement of the life-supporting capacity of surface water consistent with regional priorities.*

##### **WAL ER 2**

*Provision for the needs of water users consistent with allocation priorities and maintenance of the potential to meet the needs of future generations.*

##### **WAL ER 3**

*Efficient and effective management of surface water.*

## **6.2 MAINTAINING AND ENHANCING THE QUALITY OF WATER IN OUR RIVERS, STREAMS, LAKES, AND WETLANDS**

### **Background to the issue**

Water use is important to economic growth and sustainability in the region. Use of water is a fundamental requirement of most rural based industry and agricultural activities and is appropriate where effects on water quality can be avoided, remedied or mitigated. Water quality refers to the physical, chemical and biological characteristics of water that affect its ability to sustain environmental values and uses. Good surface water quality is important, not only in terms of maintaining healthy rivers and streams but also in terms of water supply purposes, meeting the consumptive demands of Taranaki's agricultural and industrial sectors and protecting the natural character and amenity values associated with particular surface water bodies.

Taranaki's water bodies have generally good to excellent water quality on most physical, chemical and biological measures and comparisons. However,

surface water quality is lost or reduced through land or water use activities resulting in point or diffuse source discharges of contaminants to surface water or onto land in circumstances where the discharge may enter water.

Point source discharges (ie: waste discharges from a pipe) commonly occur from a wide range of activities such as industries, urban wastewater treatment systems and farming operations etc. Most are treated and discharged in a manner that ensures that adverse effects on water quality are not significant or are no more than minor. However, multiple point source discharges to the same water body can have a cumulative adverse effect on water quality and point source discharges can contribute to the decline in water quality that occurs down the length of ring plain catchments. The Taranaki Regional Council closely monitors point source discharges and this will need to continue.

The cumulative effects of diffuse (widespread) or non-point source discharges to water, such as runoff from land of leachate of agricultural wastes, nutrients or sediments, are the principal cause of reduced water quality in most catchments in the region. Diffuse source contamination is often attributable to poor land use practices such as the excessive use of fertilisers and agrichemicals to land, grazing of river and stream margins, the direct entry of stock to water, and inappropriate land use on erosion prone land. The effects of diffuse source contamination are also exacerbated by the loss or modification of riparian vegetation along the banks of waterways. The adverse effects of point source discharges are not always significant and some are no more than minor.

**The significant issues in relation to maintaining or enhancing surface water quality are:**

<b>WQU ISS 1</b>	<b>Managing adverse effects on water quality arising from point source discharges to water bodies.</b>
<b>WQU ISS 2</b>	<b>Managing adverse effects on water quality arising from diffuse source discharges to water bodies.</b>
<b>WQU ISS 3</b>	<b>Managing the cumulative adverse effects on water quality arising from both multiple point source discharges and diffuse source discharges to water bodies.</b>

## **OBJECTIVE**

### **WQU OBJECTIVE 1**

**To maintain and enhance surface water quality in Taranaki's rivers, streams, lakes and wetlands by avoiding, remedying or mitigating any adverse effects**

**of point source and diffuse source discharges to water.**

## **POLICIES**

### **Sustainable land management practices**

#### **WQU POLICY 1**

*Sustainable land management practices and techniques that avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on surface water quality will be encouraged, including:*

- (a) *the retention and restoration of effective riparian buffer zones;*
- (b) *the careful application of the correct types and quantity of fertiliser and agrichemicals;*
- (c) *the careful application of the appropriate quantities of farm dairy effluent having regard to topography, land area, weather and soil conditions;*
- (d) *the development, recontouring and restoration of disturbed land to reduce diffuse source discharges of contaminants to water;*
- (e) *farm management practices that avoid, remedy or mitigate the effects of stock entry to rivers and streams, trampling and pugging by stock, overgrazing, and accelerated erosion from inappropriate land use on erosion prone land; and*
- (f) *other land management practices, including the discharge of contaminants to land and the diversion of stormwater runoff to land, which avoid or reduce contamination of surface water.*

### **Riparian management**

#### **WQU POLICY 2**

*The retirement and planting of riparian margins throughout the Taranaki region will be promoted, with a particular focus on ring plain catchments.*

### **Protection of water quality in areas of high natural character**

#### **WQU POLICY 3**

*The water quality of the Stony (Hangatahua) River catchment and other rivers, streams, lakes and wetlands with high natural character, ecological and amenity values such as the Maketawa Stream catchment and parts of the Manganui River catchment will be maintained and enhanced as far as practicable.*

### **Domestic and community water supplies**

#### **WQU POLICY 4**

*The importance of maintaining or enhancing water quality in catchments which are used for domestic and community water supplies will be recognised.*

### **Point source discharges to surface water**

#### **WQU POLICY 5**

*Waste reduction and waste treatment and disposal practices, which avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse*

environmental effects of the point source discharge of contaminants into water or onto or into land will be required. This includes the cumulative adverse effects of multiple point source discharges to the same waterbody.

In considering policies in regional plans or resource consent proposals to discharge contaminants or water to land or water, matters to be considered by the Taranaki Regional Council will include:

- (a) the actual or potential effects of the discharge on the natural character, ecological and amenity values of the water body, including indigenous biodiversity values, fishery values and the habitat of trout;
- (b) the relationship of tangata whenua with the water body;
- (c) the use of water for domestic and community water supply purposes;
- (d) the actual or potential risks to human and animal health from the discharge;
- (e) the significance of any historic heritage values associated with the waterbody;
- (f) the degree to which the needs of other resource users might be compromised;
- (g) the allowance for reasonable mixing zones and sufficient dilution (determined in accordance with (a) to (o) of this Policy);
- (h) the potential for cumulative effects;
- (i) measures to reduce the volume and toxicity of the contaminant;
- (j) off set mitigation of the effects of the contaminants;
- (k) measures to reduce the risk of unintended discharges of contaminants;
- (l) the necessity of the discharge and the use of the best practicable option for the treatment and disposal of contaminants;
- (m) the availability and effectiveness of alternative means of disposing of the contaminant;
- (n) relevant national guidelines and national environmental standards on catchment management; and
- (o) the sensitivity of the receiving environment.

#### Restoration of water quality

##### **WQU POLICY 6**

Where the life-supporting capacity of rivers, streams, lakes or wetlands is under pressure as a result of point or diffuse discharges to surface water, improvements in the biological health and quality of water will be promoted.

For the purposes of this policy, in determining the desired life supporting capacity, the matters to be considered will include:

- (a) the existing status of water quality according to a selection of chemical parameters and its consequences for life-supporting capacity;

- (b) the existing habitat quality, including the need to maintain and enhance aquatic ecosystems and species;
- (c) the degree to which cultural and spiritual values of or customary uses by tangata whenua are affected by existing water quality; and
- (d) the natural character, ecological and amenity values of the water body, including indigenous biodiversity values, fishery values and the habitat of trout and the potential for enhancement of those values.

#### Explanation of the policies

Policy 1 outlines management practices to be encouraged that will contribute to maintaining and enhancing water quality by reducing diffuse source discharges of contaminants.

Policy 2 recognises the significant water quality benefits that can be achieved by maintaining and enhancing existing riparian vegetation and promoting the restoration of riparian margins. Riparian margins help mitigate adverse effects of diffuse source discharges of contaminants by providing buffering capacity and preventing direct entry of stock into waterways. Policy 2 applies throughout Taranaki. However, the focus will be on ring plain catchments, which includes Taranaki's most intensively farmed land and where pressures associated with diffuse source contamination are most significant.

Policy 3 recognises that some rivers, streams, lakes and wetlands are highly valued for their natural character, and ecological and amenity values. Through this policy, the Council seeks to maintain or enhance the quality of water in systems recognised as having high natural character and in-stream values (refer Appendix I).

Policy 4 recognises the importance to people and communities and their health and safety, of maintaining or enhancing water quality in catchments used for domestic or community water supplies. However, nutrients or other contaminants will always be present in water, either from natural sources or from the effects of land use or discharging activities, even if these activities are managed to best practice standards. Investment in appropriate water treatment systems and processes will therefore also be required to ensure the community has suitable potable water.

Policy 5 recognises that there are existing discharges to surface water and that discharges to surface water will be necessary in future. Policy 5 sets out a framework to assess proposals or policy on point source discharges to surface water. It requires waste reduction or treatment practices that avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse environmental effects arising from the discharge of contaminants to land or water from

point sources. The policy also states the matters that will be considered by the Taranaki Regional Council including catchment specific values and uses, the degree to which other resource users (both consumptive and non-consumptive) may be affected, the adoption of measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects, including off set mitigation measures such as riparian plantings, and any national guidelines.

Where multiple point source discharges occur to the same water body there may be cumulative adverse effects on water quality. These effects are also to be avoided, remedied or mitigated under Policy 5.

Policy 6 relating to life supporting capacity is to establish an overall policy intention to generally upgrade the receiving water environment in those waters in which the life supporting capacity is under pressure. Parameters that may be used to measure life supporting capacity include biological oxygen demand, suspended sediment, dissolved reactive phosphate, nitrate and ammonia levels, pH, temperature, macro-invertebrate community index, the presence of pathogenic micro-organisms, and nuisance algae. The necessity of the discharge itself will be considered under Policy 5.

#### Related policies

All policies relating to **Section 5.1** [Soil erosion]; Policy 1 of **Section 5.2** [Soil health], **Section 6.1** [Sustainable water allocation], **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality], **Section 6.4** [Wetlands], **Section 6.5** [Land drainage and other associated diversions], and **Section 6.6** [Use of river and lake beds]; Policy 1 of **Section 8.1** [Preservation of the natural character of the coastal environment]; all policies relating to **Section 9** [Indigenous biodiversity], **Section 10.1** [Outstanding natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; and **Section 13** [Minerals]; Policy 1 of **Section 15.2** [Regionally significant infrastructure]; and all policies relating to **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

**WQU METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation to ensure that any adverse effects of point and diffuse source discharges to land and water are avoided, remedied, or mitigated, and that water quality is maintained and enhanced, particularly in water bodies that have high natural character, ecological and amenity values and in those that have relatively poor water quality.

**WQU METH 2** Apply regional rules to allow, regulate, and in some instances prohibit the following point source discharges to land and water:

- (a) point source discharges of water;
- (b) point source discharges of stormwater;
- (c) point source discharges from closed landfills;
- (d) point source discharges from industrial and trade premises;
- (e) point source agricultural discharges;
- (f) point source discharges from hydrocarbon exploration; and
- (g) other point source discharges.

**WQU METH 3** Participate and support the dairy farming industry in the preparation and implementation of a regional action plan under the **Dairying and Clean Streams Accord** and include in that Plan targets for excluding stock from water bodies, farm dairy effluent discharge compliance with resource consents, the protection of regionally significant wetlands, and nutrient management.

**WQU METH 4** Implement the **Sustainable Land Management Programme** to promote sustainable land use practices that will avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of diffuse source discharges.

**WQU METH 5** Implement the **Riparian Management Programme** to promote the retirement and planting of riparian margins by:

- (a) liaising and consulting with interested land users;
- (b) preparing property plans in conjunction with landowners containing property-specific advice on riparian management actions and programmes; and
- (c) providing on-going technical advice, information and other assistance to plan holders, promoting riparian management.

**WQU METH 6** Consider the use of **financial incentives**, such as the provision of plant material at low cost to landowners, for riparian management purposes.

**WQU METH 7** Provide **advice and information** including guidelines, to landowners, resource users and the public:

- (a) to generally promote awareness of water quality issues;
- (b) to encourage the adoption of riparian

- management principles and practices that avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects of diffuse source discharges on water quality; and
- (c) on systems, siting, design, installation, operation and maintenance procedures for industrial and agricultural waste treatment and disposal systems.
- (d) promote where appropriate the adoption of waste disposal systems that reduce the potential for cumulative adverse effects on water quality.
- WQU METH 8** **Advocate**, as appropriate:
- (a) to manufacturers and suppliers of agrichemicals, fertilisers and other agricultural compounds, the strengthening of the education and information provision role they play with a view to minimising the likelihood and potential effects of agrichemical and fertiliser application on water quality;
- (b) to industrial and agricultural users to adopt waste minimisation or reduction practices and cleaner production technologies to reduce the quantity of contaminants being discharged to the environment;
- (c) to industry to prepare and adopt codes of practice and guidelines aimed at reducing the effects of point and diffuse source discharges;
- (d) to territorial authorities to construct and upgrade stormwater reticulation systems and wastewater treatment systems where urban developments make such an upgrade desirable; and
- (e) to territorial authorities, the Department of Conservation, and other appropriate organisations such as the Queen Elizabeth II National Trust and the Taranaki Tree Trust, that they protect or retire riparian margins.
- WQU METH 9** Promote the application and use of relevant **industry codes of practice**.
- WQU METH 10** **Liaise or consult** as appropriate with territorial authorities regarding resource consent applications upstream of community water supply abstraction points.
- WQU METH 11** Participate in the development and implementation of any **national environmental standards or national policy**

**statements** on water quality or human drinking water standards.

**WQU METH 12** **Support**, as and when appropriate, actions by the dairy industry under the Dairy Industry Strategy for Sustainable Environmental Management.

**WQU METH 13** **Require** the preparation of **contingency plans** to reduce the risk of a spill that may have significant adverse effects on water quality.

**WQU METH 14** **Monitor and gather information** on the state of water quality, pressures on water quality, and responses to management.

**WQU METH 15** **Support**, as and when appropriate, **research and investigations** into water quality management including waste treatment options and the cumulative effects of point source discharges on water quality.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following methods:

**WQU METH 16** Include in **district plans**, policies, rules, guidelines or other information to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of land use activities and management practices on water quality.

**WQU METH 17** Include in **district plans** and **resource consents**, provisions or conditions for fencing and the retention or planting of riparian vegetation, including rules for the creation of esplanade reserves and esplanade strips when land is subdivided.

**WQU METH 18** Consider the use of **financial incentives** such as land purchase or compensation, fencing grants, providing plants, rates relief and other funds.

**WQU METH 19** **Plant**, where appropriate, riparian margins on land owned by the territorial authority.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for water quality issues in the Taranaki region. Their aim is to maintain Taranaki's generally high to excellent water quality and to enhance that water quality by addressing the effects of water contamination from diffuse and point sources.

The objective sets a broad direction for water quality management that seeks to maintain and enhance overall surface water quality in Taranaki's rivers, streams, lakes and wetlands. The objective states that this is to be done by avoiding, remedying or mitigating the adverse effects of point and diffuse source discharges to water through the policies and methods set out. The terms 'maintain' and 'enhance' as used in the objective are not mutually exclusive terms that require both to be given effect to in all cases. The objective has been adopted to establish a broad region-wide goal but the extent to which surface water quality is maintained and enhanced will be determined on a case by case basis by reference to the policies and methods in the RPS. In some situations it will be appropriate that water quality be maintained and enhanced. In other situations for example where a new or increased discharge to water is proposed, it may not always be practicable to enhance water quality, but a range of matters and considerations have been set out in the Regional Policy Statement by which any adverse effects can be avoided, remedied or mitigated.

In respect of point source discharges of contaminants, the policies and methods focus on regulatory methods (complemented by a mix of non-regulatory methods). Regulation is a simple, efficient and effective method of controlling the adverse effects of these discharges, including their cumulative adverse effects on water quality.

Through rules and other provisions in a regional plan, appropriate levels of control are applied that address point source discharges to fresh water and which also protect water quality in rivers and streams that have high natural character, ecological and amenity values. In respect of diffuse source discharges – the most significant source of contaminants entering waterways – non-regulatory methods such as advice and information and, in particular, the implementation of the Riparian Management Programme and the Sustainable Land Management Programme are considered appropriate. These programmes have proven to be successful to date in terms of public acceptance, the adoption of sustainable land management practices and the achievement of desired environmental outcomes. Other non-regulatory methods also contribute towards achieving the desired environmental outcomes. Financial incentives will aid in landowner acceptance and co-operation with regard to retiring land, particularly where these incentives support a voluntary approach to land use and management. The approaches for point and diffuse source discharges are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

## **Environmental results anticipated**

### **WQU ER 1**

*All significant point source discharges to surface water consented and monitored.*

### **WQU ER 2**

*Any adverse environmental effects of point source discharges to surface water are avoided, remedied or mitigated.*

### **WQU ER 3**

*Increased planting and fencing along the margins of rivers, streams lakes and wetlands with:*

- *90% of dairy farms having riparian management plans by 2016; and*
- *90% of riparian management plans implemented by 2016.*

### **WQU ER 4**

*Maintain or enhance surface water quality and the life-supporting capacity of freshwater against a range of physical, chemical and biological measures.*



### The resource consents process and compliance monitoring

The Taranaki Regional Council's regulatory activities, particularly in the area of resource consent processing and administration and compliance monitoring, is one of the core activities of Council. The level of activity in this area fluctuates from year-to-year depending on the level of economic activity and other factors, but the Council anticipates it will process some 3,000 applications for resource consents (covering coastal, discharge, land use or water permits) over the next ten years.

In relation to water quality, all significant point source discharges to fresh water have a resource consent. Through the resource consents process, discharge activities that may have significant adverse effects on water quality are considered and only allowed subject to compliance with certain conditions (activities that have little or no adverse effects are permitted through rules in the *Regional Fresh Water Plan for Taranaki* – subject to compliance with conditions).

As at 1 April 2009, there were 1,479 discharge consents to surface water in the Taranaki region – 1,046 (or 71%) of which are agricultural discharges. Every discharge activity authorised by resource consent is monitored to ensure that the consent holder is complying with the conditions of that consent. The frequency and extent of that monitoring depends upon the size, scale and nature of discharge activity being monitored as well as the potential environmental impacts of the activity.

Over the last decade, there has been significant investment made by agriculture and industry in waste treatment and disposal systems and the overall level of compliance with consent conditions is high (generally around 95%). As a result, Taranaki rivers and streams show good to excellent water quality against most measures.



### Riparian Management Programme

A major focus of the Taranaki Regional Council's land management work over the next ten years will be to continue to promote the retirement and planting of riparian margins along Taranaki rivers, streams, lakes and wetlands through the Riparian Management Programme.

The Riparian Management Programme, targets dairying land use on the ring plain, and includes the provision of a property planning service to land occupiers involving the preparation of riparian management plans and associated supply of low cost, high quality riparian plants.

Riparian management plans set out recommendations for the retirement or re-vegetation of land along the banks of rivers and streams. The retirement or revegetation of riparian margins forms an interface between the stream and land, preventing stock access, and decreases the amount of diffuse contaminants (in the form of animal excreta, sediment and fertiliser run-off) entering the stream and reducing water quality. Not only does this have major benefits for fresh water quality, it also has benefits for coastal waters into which rivers and streams ultimately flow.

As at 30 June 2009, the Taranaki Regional Council had prepared 2,255 riparian management plans, covering 12,212 kilometres of streambank. Some 93% of Taranaki dairy farms now have a riparian plan for their property. The programme has grown exponentially over time particularly since the implementation of the *Dairying and Clean Streams Accord – Regional Action Plan for Taranaki* has begun to be implemented. There continues to be strong demand for the property planning service and most plan recommendations are being implemented progressively. The Council's target as set out in the Regional Action Plan is to have 90% of dairy farms covered by riparian plans by 2010 and to have 90% implemented by 2015.



## 6.3 MAINTAINING GROUNDWATER FLOWS AND QUALITY AT SUSTAINABLE LEVELS

### Background to the issue

There are four principal groundwater aquifers in the Taranaki region – the Matemateaonga Formation aquifers, Whenuakura Formation aquifers, Marine Terrace aquifers and the Taranaki Volcanics aquifers. However, while groundwater resources in the region are significant, considerably less is known about this resource compared with surface water (particularly those at depth). Yields are also relatively low, compared with other regions.

Most groundwater use in the region is for stock and domestic purposes, which generally involves small volumes and low rates of extraction with no significant adverse environmental effects. Other significant groundwater use is for industrial purposes, community water supply, and pastoral and horticultural irrigation.

Even though use of groundwater in Taranaki is low compared with many other parts of the country, it is increasing. Short term fluctuations in groundwater levels are normal and do not necessarily indicate that groundwater abstractions are unsustainable. However, a long-term decline in groundwater levels could occur if abstractions exceed the natural recharge of the resource. Reduced groundwater levels not only affect the aquifer but can also cause interference between adjacent wells or bores and affect flows and levels in nearby surface water bodies.

Groundwater quality in Taranaki is generally good, although there are some variations due to local geology and the influence of intensive agricultural land use on shallow unconfined aquifers in the Taranaki volcanics and marine terraces. Point and diffuse source discharges from industrial, agricultural and domestic activities to groundwater may result in declining groundwater quality (eg, elevated nitrate levels in unconfined, shallow groundwater), which in turn can impact on existing and potential groundwater users. Groundwater abstractions can also lead to the inflow of poor quality recharge water or seawater (where in close proximity to the sea). Microscopic biota in groundwater may play a role in the protection of groundwater quality.

Deep well injection of production water and other exploration waste to deep confined aquifers below the fresh water and salt water interface is a reasonable and appropriate method of disposing of waste providing appropriate safeguards are taken.

**The significant issues in relation to maintaining groundwater flows and quality are:**

**GWR ISS 1** Managing adverse effects on groundwater flows arising from over abstractions.

**GWR ISS 2** Managing adverse effects on groundwater quality arising from land use, the discharge of contaminants, and poor well and bore siting and construction.

### OBJECTIVES

#### GWR OBJECTIVE 1

*To sustainably manage the use of groundwater in the Taranaki region by:*

- (a) enabling people and communities to take and use groundwater to meet their needs while avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects arising from that use; and*
- (b) avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects on groundwater quality from over abstraction, intensive agricultural land uses, the discharge of contaminants, and poor well and bore construction.*

#### GWR OBJECTIVE 2

*To improve knowledge of groundwater resources in Taranaki to promote the sustainable management of groundwater resources.*

### POLICIES

#### Sustainable yield

##### GWR POLICY 1

*The groundwater resources of Taranaki will be managed on a sustainable yield basis to prevent adverse effects on groundwater levels and yields and groundwater quality.*

#### Taking and use of groundwater

##### GWR POLICY 2

*Groundwater allocations will be made having regard to:*

- (a) the need to maintain a sustainable yield of the aquifer;*
- (b) the need to ensure groundwater is available for reasonable domestic needs, stock watering requirements and fire fighting purposes;*
- (c) the need for the volumes sought;*
- (d) the need to use water efficiently and with a minimum of waste;*
- (e) the need to avoid the inflow of poor quality water into aquifers;*
- (f) the need to avoid saltwater intrusion into aquifers;*
- (g) the need to avoid significant interference with existing lawfully established and sustainable water uses;*
- (h) the cumulative effects of existing takes from the aquifer;*

- (i) *the degree to which the abstraction may impact on nearby surface water bodies and surface water takes; and*
- (j) *the need to install systems to accurately measure the volumes of water abstracted.*

#### Alternative to use of surface water

##### **GWR POLICY 3**

*The use of high quality groundwater for community and industrial supply will be promoted as an alternative to the use of surface water resources, provided that any adverse effects arising from the use of groundwater are avoided, remedied or mitigated.*

#### Groundwater quality

##### **GWR POLICY 4**

*Groundwater quality will be maintained and enhanced by:*

- (a) *managing the discharge of contaminants to land and water such that any actual or potential adverse effects on groundwater quality are avoided, remedied or mitigated;*
- (b) *managing the siting, drilling, construction or alteration of wells and bores;*
- (c) *managing old, damaged and unused wells or bores;*
- (d) *controlling deepwell injection of wastewater or other contaminants to groundwater to ensure there is no significant risk of degradation to useable groundwater resources; and*
- (e) *promoting land use practices that minimise as far as practicable the potential for adverse effects on groundwater quality.*

#### Explanation of the policies

Policy 1 states that groundwater in Taranaki will be managed on a sustainable yield basis. The concept of sustainable yield applies to both the quantity and quality aspects of groundwater and is the quantity of groundwater that can be abstracted from an aquifer for a prolonged period without depleting the resource or causing other adverse effects on groundwater quality or groundwater users.

Policy 2 identifies those matters to be considered in relation to the taking and use of groundwater. These matters include consideration of sustainable yield, flow depletion and the avoidance, remedying and mitigating of other adverse effects on the environment. The policy recognises the connectivity between surface waters and groundwater by having regard to the degree to which an abstraction of groundwater might impact on surface water bodies or surface water takes. The Policy states that groundwater is to be available for reasonable domestic needs, stock watering (for cattle, pig, poultry and other livestock) and fire fighting. This reflects the requirements of section 14(3) of the Act.

The use of groundwater for community water supplies is important to enable people and communities access to essential water resources. Other users may benefit by connecting to community water supplies. This provides for better quality construction of bores, better control of abstraction and monitoring of aquifers and improved security of the aquifer from contamination.

Policy 3 recognises demands on surface water quality resources and seeks to promote the alternative use of high quality groundwater for community and industrial supply – subject to any adverse effects arising from the use of groundwater being avoided, remedied, or mitigated.

Policy 4 addresses the maintenance and enhancement of groundwater quality. The policy aims to prevent aquifer cross-contamination and aquifer contamination from the surface due to open or unsealed bores or wells, or contamination from drilling activities or waste disposal activities (whether surface or sub surface). It also involves promoting land use practices and managing the discharge of contaminants to land and water to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on groundwater quality. This is particularly an issue in major aquifer recharge zones especially those used for community water supplies. Bores sharing the same aquifers as community supplies, especially those further up the aquifer should be constructed to the same standard as required by the Ministry of Health for community supplies.

#### Related policies

All policies relating to **Section 5.1** [Soil erosion] and **Section 5.2** [Soil health]; Policy 3 of **Section 6.1** [Surface water allocation]; Policy 1 of **Section 8.1** [Preservation of the natural character of the coastal environment]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; Policy 1 of **Section 15.2** [Regionally significant infrastructure]; and all policies relating to **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

#### METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- GWR METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation addressing the taking and use of groundwater and the discharge of contaminants to groundwater.
- GWR METH 2** Apply **regional rules** to allow, regulate and avoid adverse effects on the environment from the taking and use of groundwater and the (direct or indirect) discharge of contaminants to groundwater.

- GWR METH 3** Provide **advice and information**, including guidelines, to landowners, resource users and the public:
- (a) to generally promote awareness of groundwater issues;
  - (b) to promote the conservation and efficient use of groundwater;
  - (c) on systems, siting, design, installation, operation and maintenance procedures for groundwater takes and land disposal systems;
  - (d) on land use practices that minimise the potential for adverse effects on groundwater quality; and
  - (e) to promote the sustainable use of deep groundwater for community and industrial supply.

**GWR METH 4** **Advocate** as appropriate to manufacturers and suppliers of agrichemicals, fertilisers and other agricultural compounds, the strengthening of the education and information provision role they play with a view to minimising the likelihood and potential effects on groundwater quality of the application and use of agrichemicals, fertilisers and agricultural compounds.

- GWR METH 5** **Encourage**, as appropriate:
- (a) water harvesting, the use of storage reservoirs or impoundments to store water at times of high water flow, or the collection or storage of rainwater; and
  - (b) the adoption of water saving practices and the use of water saving devices, water metering, water recycling and the use of more efficient plant or manufacturing processes.

**GWR METH 6** **Monitor and gather information** on the state of groundwater flows and quality, pressures on groundwater flows and quality, and responses to management.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following method:

**GWR METH 7** **Promote** the location and sustainable use of groundwater for community and industrial supply.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for maintaining

groundwater flows and quality in the Taranaki region. Their aim is to maintain Taranaki's generally high to excellent groundwater quality.

In respect of addressing groundwater issues, the policies and methods focus on regulatory methods (complemented by a mix of non-regulatory methods). Regulation, through the inclusion of rules in the *Regional Fresh Water Plan for Taranaki* and conditions on resource consents relating to the siting and management of bores and wells, is a simple, efficient and effective method of controlling adverse effects associated with the taking and use of groundwater and deepwell injection. Other methods such as information provision will also be useful tools in achieving the objective, particularly in relation to diffuse source discharges to groundwater. These methods are considered to be the appropriate approaches having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### **GWR ER 1**

*Provision for the needs of consumptive water users.*

##### **GWR ER 2**

*Takes of groundwater that do not exceed the sustainable yield of aquifers.*

##### **GWR ER3**

*Maintenance of good to excellent groundwater quality against accepted national standards comprising physical, chemical and biological measures of water quality.*

## 6.4 PROTECTING THE NATURAL CHARACTER OF WETLANDS

### Background to the issue

Wetlands are defined as "...permanently or intermittently wet areas, shallow water, and land water margins that support a natural ecosystem of plants and animals that are adapted to wet conditions".<sup>5</sup>

Prior to European settlement much of the Taranaki landscape was covered in wetlands, but since that time 98.5% of these areas have been drained or filled for agricultural production and urban development, leaving the region with a relative scarcity of wetland habitats, well below the national average. Because of their scarcity, the remaining wetlands have a heightened value.

Outside the Egmont National Park, most of Taranaki's remaining wetlands are small and surrounded by farmland. With the increasing intensification of land use in Taranaki, wetlands are continuing to be lost to land drainage and development or are being adversely affected by land management practices. Many wetlands are unfenced and grazed by livestock.

<sup>5</sup> As defined in the Resource Management Act 1991.

Grazing, especially in conjunction with pugging by cattle, can reduce the size of wetlands over time and adversely affect their natural character, ecological, physical, cultural, intrinsic, amenity and biodiversity values. Agricultural pollution and sedimentation from farm runoff also has an adverse effect on wetland values.

Taranaki's wetland remnants are critically important to the conservation of a wide variety of native and valued introduced species. As wetlands continue to be lost and degraded or otherwise affected due to agricultural and urban activities, those flora and fauna species that depend on them for their survival will also decline and, some species may eventually disappear from areas due to a lack of habitat. On the other hand, wetland habitats may change and migrate under changing environmental conditions (eg water depth), especially in dune and estuarine environments.

Wetlands are also valued for reasons other than their rarity. They perform important hydrological functions by storing water and regulating water flows during heavy rains, and off setting low flows during dry periods. They also provide ecological linkages with terrestrial and other aquatic ecosystems.

Some wetlands have been artificially created, for example for community water supply, hydroelectric power generation or for stock watering purpose. Such wetlands may have important natural and ecological values. However the protection of the natural character of these wetlands should enable the continuing use of the wetland for the primary purpose for which the wetland was created.

**The significant issues in relation to protecting the natural character of wetlands are:**

- WET  
ISS 1**      **Managing adverse effects of surrounding land use on the natural character of wetlands.**
- WET  
ISS 2**      **Avoiding cumulative modification, degradation and loss of wetland habitats and the indigenous and other valued species which depend on them through land drainage and other activities.**

**OBJECTIVE**

**WET OBJECTIVE 1**

***To protect the natural character of Taranaki's wetlands from inappropriate subdivision, use and development and ensure that any adverse effects of activities on wetlands are avoided, remedied or mitigated.***

**POLICIES**

**Protection of wetlands**

**WET POLICY 1**

*The protection of wetlands in the Taranaki region from inappropriate subdivision, use and development will be promoted.*

**Promotion of wetlands**

**WET POLICY 2**

*The enhancement and creation of wetland areas will be encouraged, where appropriate.*

**Explanation of the policy**

Policy 1 is adopted to give effect to the requirement of section 6(a) of the Resource Management Act to recognise and provide for the preservation of the natural character of wetland and their margins from the adverse effects of inappropriate subdivision, use and development. What constitutes 'inappropriate' versus 'appropriate' subdivision, use and development needs to be considered on a case-by-case basis and depends upon the values and characteristics of a wetland, including associated flora and fauna species, the nature of the activity, and any adverse effects that must be avoided, remedied or mitigated.

Where wetlands have been artificially created for example to form lakes for community water supply, hydroelectric power generation or for stock watering, the primary purpose for which the wetland was created will be recognised in determining appropriate use and development.

Policy 2 recognises the relative scarcity of wetlands and seeks to encourage the enhancement or creation of such areas as appropriate.

**Related policies**

All policies relating to **Section 6.1** [Surface water allocation]; Policies 3 and 4 in **Section 6.2** [Water quality]; all policies in **Section 6.5** [Land drainage and associated diversions]; Policy 1 in **Section 8.2** [Natural character of the coastal environment]; all policies in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity], **Section 10.1** [Outstanding natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; **Section 15.2** [Regionally significant infrastructure], **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

**METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION**

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- WET  
METH 1**      Maintain a **regional plan** or plans with objectives, policies, rules and methods of implementation to promote the protection of wetlands from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.

- WET METH 2** Apply **regional rules** to regulate, and in some instances prohibit, resource use and development activities that have actual or potential or adverse environmental effects on the natural character of wetlands.
- WET METH 3** **Identify** wetlands including regionally significant wetlands in an inventory and **monitor** trends in their size and condition.
- WET METH 4** **Monitor and gather information** on the state of wetlands, pressures on wetlands and responses to management.
- WET METH 5** When implementing the Taranaki Regional Council's Riparian Management Programme and Sustainable Land Management Programme, **promote** the protection, re-establishment or restoration of wetlands, including the fencing and planting of riparian margins adjoining wetlands.
- WET METH 6** **Advocate**, as appropriate to territorial authorities, the Department of Conservation and other appropriate organizations, such as the Queen Elizabeth II Trust and the Taranaki Tree Trust, that they protect wetlands.
- WET METH 7** Consider the use of **financial incentives**, such as grants, subsidies, rate relief, and the provision of plant material at low cost to landowners, to promote the protection of wetlands.
- WET METH 8** Provide **advice and information**, including guidelines, to landowners and the general public about wetland values and the need to protect wetlands.
- Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following methods:
- WET METH 9** **METH 9** Include in **district plans** and on **resource consents**, provisions or conditions to protect the natural character of wetlands from inappropriate subdivision, use and development, including on adjoining land that may affect the wetland.
- WET METH 10** Grant **rate relief** on land mandatorily or voluntarily protected for the purpose of protecting wetlands.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for protecting the natural character of wetlands and their margins. In particular, they address matters of national importance under the Resource Management Act – namely, the preservation of the natural character of wetlands and their margins and the protection of wetlands from inappropriate subdivision, use and development (section 6(a) of the Act).

The objective, policies and methods establish a policy framework for protecting the natural character of wetlands in the Taranaki region. Through the implementation of the policies and methods, the Taranaki Regional Council can manage adverse effects on wetlands. The policies and methods build on current approaches applied to the protection and enhancement of wetlands. These have proven to be successful to date in terms of achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### WET ER 1

*The areal extent of all wetlands in Taranaki is maintained.*

##### WET ER 2

*The number and areal extent of wetlands with regionally significant natural character and in-stream values, and which are formally protected or covenanted, is increased.*

## 6.5 MANAGING LAND DRAINAGE AND ASSOCIATED DIVERSION OF WATER

### Background to the issue

Land drainage involves the diversion of water from land and is carried out to reduce soil water content to improve plant (pasture) growth or improve land management and development. Land drainage has the positive effect of increasing the productivity of land by improving the land's carrying capacity, providing for better land management and reducing the incidence of localised flooding. This improvement benefits individual landowners as well as the regional and national economy.

Although land drainage activities and associated diversions provide many land management benefits, such activities may also result in adverse effects on the environment, or on other users of fresh water, and these effects must be avoided, remedied or mitigated.

Run-off of water from land increases due to land drainage and other developments (the re-contouring of land, road works, urban development), producing

higher peak flows, more rapid flow recessions due to a lack of delayed surface runoff, and lower stream flows during dry periods. This can adversely affect the natural character, ecological and amenity values of water bodies, with increased rates of bank erosion and sedimentation, and the degradation and loss of aquatic habitat. These impacts can then adversely affect indigenous biodiversity values, fishery values, and the habitat of trout. The degradation or accretion of riverbeds and adverse and unintended impacts on neighbouring properties and assets, stormwater systems, and other infrastructure, as a result of increased flood flows, is also an issue in some catchments.

Conversely, extensive drainage systems have been developed within Taranaki. Where these systems are not properly maintained, there is further potential for flooding, erosion of adjoining properties and the discharge of sediment and other contaminants.

New drainage activities, including the piping of small streams and also the maintenance of some existing drains can adversely affect Taranaki's remaining remnant wetlands by reducing the quantity and quality of habitats available for wetland species, adversely affecting the natural character of wetlands, and make wetlands more vulnerable to the impacts of land management practices and livestock grazing.

The Taranaki Regional Council has responsibilities under the Resource Management Act for managing the effects and use of watercourses and water bodies, and of drainage and stormwater run-off. It also has responsibilities under the Land Drainage Act 1908 and the Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941. Territorial authorities have responsibilities under the Local Government Act 2002 to manage stormwater infrastructure, the Building Act 2004 in terms of ensuring buildings and siteworks are not constructed in such a way that surface water adversely impacts, damages or becomes a nuisance to people or other properties including the outfalls of drainage systems, and the Resource Management Act in terms of controlling the effects of the use, development or protection of land.

**The significant issues in relation to managing land drainage and associated diversions of water are:**

- LDD  
ISS 1**      **Maintaining existing drainage systems to address the land production and management benefits of appropriate land drainage and associated diversions of water from land.**
- LDD  
ISS 2**      **Managing the effects of land drainage and associated diversions of water on adjoining properties or network utilities.**

- LDD  
ISS 3**      **Managing the effects of land drainage and associated diversions of water on river, streams, lakes and wetland hydrology, water quality, natural character, aquatic life and instream habitat.**

**OBJECTIVE**

**LDD OBJECTIVE 1**

**To recognise and provide for the land production and management benefits of appropriate land drainage and associated diversions of water from land in the Taranaki region while avoiding, remedying or mitigating any adverse effects on the environment.**

**POLICY**

**Sustainable land drainage practices**

**LDD POLICY 1**

*The land production and land management benefits of land drainage and associated diversions of water will be recognised and provided for while avoiding, remedying or mitigating any adverse effects of these activities on:*

- (a) *the natural character of rivers, lakes and wetlands and their margins;*
- (b) *the water quality, hydrology and ecological and amenity values of any waterbodies including indigenous biodiversity values, fishery values and the habitat of trout;*
- (c) *the relationship of tangata whenua with the water body, particularly with taonga;*
- (d) *the frequency and magnitude of natural hazards such as flooding and erosion; and*
- (e) *other water users;*
- (f) *the areal extent of wetland habitats; and*
- (g) *the protection of historic heritage.*

**Explanation of the policy**

Policy 1 recognises the land production and management benefits that accrue from land drainage and provides for 'appropriate' land drainage. What is appropriate land drainage will require consideration of any adverse effects that must be avoided, remedied or mitigated. The matters listed will guide decisions as to the appropriateness of land drainage activities.

**Related policies**

All policies relating to **Section 6.1** [Surface water allocation]; Policies 3 and 4 in **Section 6.2** [Water quality]; all policies relating to **Section 6.4** [Wetlands]; Policy 1 in **Section 8.2** [Natural character of the coastal environment]; all policies relating to **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity], **Section 10.1** [Outstanding natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; **Section 15.2** [Regionally significant infrastructure], and **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

**LDD METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation addressing the effects of land drainage and associated diversions of water from land.

**LDD METH 2** Apply **regional rules** to allow, control or prohibit land drainage and associated diversions of water from land that have potential or actual adverse environmental effects.

**LDD METH 3** Provide **advice, information and assistance** on:

- (a) good land drainage practices including drain construction and maintenance;
- (b) the protection of wetlands; and
- (c) the avoidance of natural hazards and adverse effects on adjoining properties and network utilities.

**LDD METH 4** Undertake **river and flood control works** when necessary under the Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941 and the Land Drainage Act 1908.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following methods:

**LDD METH 5** Include in **district plans** and conditions on **resource consents** provisions to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of stormwater runoff arising from subdivision, land development and land use, including standards relating to site drainage and off-site infrastructure e.g. stormwater drainage systems, sewer type and capacity.

**LDD METH 6** Provide **information and advice** on good engineering and design practices for subdivision and land development.

### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for managing land drainage and associated diversions of water from land in the region.

Through the implementation of regional plans and, in particular the use of regional rules, the Taranaki Regional Council can provide for appropriate land drainage and associated water diversion activities

while managing any adverse effects. The policies and methods build on current approaches to this issue. They have proven to be successful to date in achieving desired environmental outcomes, and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs. Further monitoring is to be carried out which will provide additional information on this matter.

### Environmental results anticipated

#### LDD ER 1

*Provision for appropriate land drainage activities and associated diversions of water.*

#### LDD ER 2

*Minimisation of adverse effects on people, property and the environment, including wetlands.*

## 6.6 MANAGING EFFECTS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF AND DISTURBANCES TO RIVER AND LAKE BEDS

### Background to the issue

People and communities derive considerable economic, social and safety benefits from the use of river and lake beds. Dams and weirs are important for water supply or generating hydro-electric power, while culverts, bridges and fords are important for access purposes. River and flood control works protect people and property from the risks of flooding and erosion. Some river and lake bed uses also provide positive environmental benefits. Culverts, for example, prevent the direct passage of vehicles or stock through a river. Some structures date from early periods in Taranaki's history and may be of considerable historical interest and value.

Taranaki river and lake beds are generally in good condition. However, uses of river and lakebeds, which can range from vegetation disturbance to poorly managed gravel extraction, can cause a number of adverse environmental effects.

Some structures within river and stream channels can cause aggradation of the bed upstream and degradation of the bed downstream. Depending on the size of the structure and the stream, the impact of aggradation or degradation can be significant. Structures may also restrict water flows or change the physical characteristics of the bed causing flooding, erosion of the bed and banks, or both. This can lead to loss of habitat for plants, invertebrates and fish and impact on the natural character and amenity values of some water bodies.



Some structures such as dams, weirs and culverts can severely restrict fish migration, thereby reducing the abundance and diversity of fish species residing in upstream reaches and adversely affecting ecological and fishery values of the water body. Taranaki rivers and streams are home to at least 24 native and introduced fish species. Of the 27 native fish species in New Zealand 18 are found in Taranaki. Of these 18 native fish, 15 are diadromous, which means they have a marine or estuarine stage in their life cycle, and must therefore migrate to and from the sea. Introduced fish species such as brown and rainbow trout populations also benefit from unrestricted access to spawning and habitat areas in the upper reaches of streams and in tributaries.

Poorly managed gravel extraction from river and lake beds has particularly significant adverse environmental effects.

**The significant issues in relation to managing the effects associated with the use of and disturbances to river and lakebeds are:**

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| <b>RLB<br/>ISS 1</b> | <b>Avoiding, remedying or mitigating any adverse effects of structures on river and lake beds on water hydrology, water quality, and natural character, aquatic life and instream habitat.</b>   |
| <b>RLB<br/>ISS 2</b> | <b>Avoiding, remedying or mitigating any adverse effects of disturbances to river and lake beds on water hydrology, water quality, and natural character, aquatic life and instream habitat.</b> |
| <b>RLB<br/>ISS 3</b> | <b>Providing for appropriate fish passage along Taranaki waterways.</b>  |

## OBJECTIVE

### RLB OBJECTIVE 1

**To enable appropriate use of and disturbance within river and lake beds in Taranaki while avoiding, mitigating or remedying any adverse effects of activities on the environment.**

## POLICIES

**Adverse effects of the use of and disturbance to river and lake beds**

### RLB POLICY 1

*The use of and disturbance to river and lake beds will be carried out in a manner that avoids, remedies or mitigates as far as practicable:*

- (a) *adverse effects on the natural character, ecological and amenity values, including indigenous biodiversity values and fishery values;*

- (b) *adverse effects on fish passage, fish spawning and aquatic habitats, including the habitat of trout;*
- (c) *adverse effects on the relationship of tangata whenua with the water body;*
- (d) *adverse effects on ecological values associated with river and lake beds through the spread of pest plants;*
- (e) *adverse effects on water quality and in-stream habitat, including the passage of fish;*
- (f) *erosion or accretion of river and lake beds or banks;*
- (g) *the exposure or destabilisation of existing structures within the bed;*
- (h) *the unintentional impoundment of water and adverse effects associated with flooding and erosion;*
- (i) *reductions in the capacity of river channels to convey flood flows;*
- (j) *adverse effects of flooding on adjacent properties or uses; and*
- (k) *adverse effects on historic heritage.*

## Gravel extraction

### RLB POLICY 2

*The adverse effects of extraction of material from river and lake beds will be avoided, remedied or mitigated.*

## Unused structures

### RLB POLICY 3

*Following consultation and liaison with interested and affected parties, the removal or decommissioning of unused structures in or on riverbeds, which restrict fish passage or cause flooding and erosion problems, will be promoted, provided the advantages of removal or decommissioning outweigh the disadvantages, taking into account any actual or potential adverse effects associated with the removal or decommissioning, including effects on historic heritage values.*

## Explanation of the policies

Policy 1 sets out those adverse effects to be managed when making resource management decisions in relation to disturbances and the use of new and existing structures within river and lakebeds. Policy 1 requires adverse effects to be avoided, remedied or mitigated as far as practicable. This recognises that it may not always be possible to completely avoid, remedy or mitigate all adverse effects of the use of and disturbance to river and lake beds. However, avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse environmental effects as far as practicable does not necessarily mean that any use and development of resources that avoids, remedies or mitigates adverse environmental effects as far as practicable, will be acceptable - adverse environmental effects must be managed in a way that gives effect to the Act's

sustainable management purpose. For example, the functional operational requirements of network utilities or other critical infrastructure may have some minor or other adverse effects that cannot be fully avoided, remedied or mitigated but which are acceptable in the context of the overall sustainable management purpose of the Act.

Gravel extraction directly from river beds can have significant adverse effects on water quality, aquatic life and channel morphology. In Taranaki, extraction of aggregate from river and lake beds is generally restricted to that required for river and flood control purposes. This is because of the observed effects of past over-extraction which has caused severe river bed and bank erosion and because the rate of recovery is slow. Policy 2 has been adopted to ensure that the adverse effects of aggregate extraction from river and lake beds are avoided, remedied or mitigated. The primary means of doing this will be through a regional plan or plans.

Policy 3 recognises that there are a number of structures in river and lake beds, in particular weirs, that are no longer in use and currently restrict fish movement, or cause flooding and erosion. The intention is to promote the removal or decommissioning of such structures where it is appropriate to do so. The circumstances under which a structure is removed will be considered on a case-by-case basis. The destruction of historic structures will be carefully considered and alternatives considered. Where destruction or demolition is unavoidable the structure should be recorded prior to destruction. If the retention of a structure is considered desirable, then the circumstances, including responsibility for the structure, its maintenance and the provision of fish passage, will be determined and agreed on a case-by-case basis.

#### Related policies

Policies 1, 3 and 4 of **Section 6.1** [Surface water allocation]; Policies 3 and 4 of **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; Policy 2 of **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; Policies 2 and 3 of **Section 11** [Natural hazards]; all the policies in **Section 10.1** [Outstanding natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; and **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

**RLB METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies, rules and other methods of implementation addressing the use of river and lake beds, including aggregate extraction and recognition of the

economic, social and safety benefits of the use of river and lake beds (including for aggregate extraction and hydroelectric power generation) and the need to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects of such use and provide for fish passage.

**RLB METH 2** Apply **regional rules** to allow, regulate and avoid adverse effects on the environment from the use of river and lake beds.

**RLB METH 3** **Monitor and gather information** on potential fish barriers.

**RLB METH 4** Consider the use of **financial incentives**, such as grants and subsidies, to promote or facilitate the removal of unused structures that are a fish barrier, provided the benefits outweigh the disadvantages, taking into account any potential adverse effects.

**RLB METH 5** **Liaise** with interested and affected parties as to whether a structure is having an effect on fish passage and whether or not alterations to the structure are required to improve fish passage or whether the structure should be removed.

**RLB METH 6** Provide **information and technical assistance** to persons and communities wishing to carry out activities involving the use of river and lake beds so as to reduce adverse effects on in-stream values and other users, particularly where such activities include the planting or clearance of riverbed vegetation.

**RLB METH 7** Prepare **guidelines** on:  
(a) the maintenance of structures;  
(b) the removal, demolition or decommissioning of structures;  
(c) permitted access structures (ie, culverts, bridges and fords) and permitted barrier structures (ie, dams and weirs); and  
(d) the provision of fish passage.

**RLB METH 8** Continue to administer provisions of the Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941 and the Land Drainage Act 1908, including **undertaking river control works**, as appropriate, to ensure that rivers remain free of obstructions that could result in flooding or erosion.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The Taranaki Regional Council has responsibilities under the Resource Management Act for managing the effects associated with the use of river and lake beds.

It also has responsibilities under the Building Act 2004 in relation to dams.

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for managing adverse environmental effects associated with the use of river and lake beds. Their aim is to maintain the general good condition of Taranaki's river and lake beds.

The policies and methods focus on regulatory methods (complemented by a mix of non-regulatory methods). Regulation, through the inclusion of rules in the *Regional Fresh Water Plan for Taranaki* and conditions on resource consents relating to the siting and maintenance of river and lake bed structures and the excavation of the bed, is a simple, efficient and effective method of controlling adverse effects associated with the use of river and lake beds. Other methods such as financial incentives are necessary to promote works to remove historical fish barriers, while information provision will also assist in achieving the objective. Together, these methods are considered to be appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### **RLB ER 1**

*Any adverse effects arising from disturbances and uses of river and lake beds are avoided, remedied or mitigated as far as practicable.*

##### **RLB ER 2**

*The provision of fish passage past new and existing structures.*

## 6.7 MAINTAINING AND ENHANCING PUBLIC ACCESS TO AND ALONG RIVERS AND LAKES

### Background to the issue

Public access to and along river and lake margins allows for the use and enjoyment of the amenity, scenic and recreational values of rivers and lakes, and for the cultural and spiritual values and customary uses of tangata whenua. New Zealanders have traditionally enjoyed good access to and along rivers, lakes and their margins. Public access to streams, rivers and lakes in Taranaki is often provided by public roads, esplanade reserves, esplanade strips or by access strips where formal (legal) rights of access have been negotiated with the landowner. Where land is in private ownership, access is by agreement with the landowner.

Formal public access has increased over time – particularly through the creation of esplanade reserves

and strips along the region's rivers and lakes. However, this represents but a small proportion of the total length of Taranaki waterways, and public access remains disjointed and there is still relatively little formal access outside of urban areas. Public access to rivers, streams and lakes continues to be largely dependent on the goodwill and agreement of adjoining land owners.

The demand for or need for public access to and along rivers and lakes varies depending upon locality and particular values attached to that locality. In some cases, it will be appropriate to promote and enhance public use and enjoyment of rivers and lakes, particularly where areas are identified as having high natural character or recreational values. In other cases, it may be more appropriate to restrict public access e.g. to safeguard rare and endangered species. Providing for the maintenance and enhancement of public access beside waterways needs to be balanced against the 'private property rights' of land occupiers.

### The significant issues in relation to public access to and along rivers and lakes are:

**WPA  
ISS 1**      **Providing for the maintenance and enhancement of public access to and along rivers and lakes.**

**WPA  
ISS 2**      **Avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects that may arise from public access to and along rivers and lakes.**

## OBJECTIVE

### WPA OBJECTIVE 1

**To maintain and enhance appropriate public access to and along rivers and lakes in the Taranaki region, while avoiding, remedying or mitigating any adverse effects that may arise from that access.**

## POLICY

### Maintenance and enhancement of public access

#### WPA POLICY 1

*Encourage, as far as is practicable, the maintenance and enhancement of public access to and along rivers and lakes, except where circumstances make restrictions necessary to:*

- (a) *preserve the natural character of rivers and lakes and their margins;*
- (b) *protect private property rights and infrastructure;*
- (c) *safeguard the ecological, intrinsic or recreational attributes of rivers and lakes;*
- (d) *avoid conflicts between competing uses;*
- (e) *protect cultural and spiritual values of tangata whenua;*
- (f) *protect public health and safety;*

- (g) *protect the integrity of river control works;*
- (h) *protect historic heritage; and*
- (i) *provide for other circumstances that are sufficient to justify the restriction, notwithstanding the national importance of maintaining access.*

### Explanation of the policy

The maintenance and enhancement of public access to and along rivers and lakes and their margins is a matter of national importance under section 6(d) of the Resource Management Act. Policy 1 gives effect to section 6(d) of the Act, and requires that public access be maintained and enhanced to and along river and lake beds, except in exceptional circumstances where it is necessary to restrict access for one or more of the listed purposes.

### Related policies

Policy 1 of **Section 8.2** [Natural character of the coastal environment]; Policy 1 of **Section 8.3** [Public access to the coast]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; all policies relating to **Section 10.1** [Outstanding natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; and **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- WPA METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation addressing the maintenance and enhancement of public access to and along rivers and lakes and their margins and where necessary, restrictions on public access to protect private property, public health and safety and other matters identified in Policy 1.
- WPA METH 2** As appropriate, require new or renewed **resource consents** for the use of river and lake beds to include conditions addressing public access including where necessary, conditions restricting public access to address matters identified in Policy 1.
- WPA METH 3** Prepare and implement, in conjunction with the region's three territorial authorities, a **regional walkways and cycleways strategy** to enhance public access to and along river and lake margins.
- WPA METH 4** **Advocate**, as appropriate, the establishment of public access to and along rivers and lakes through such means as esplanade reserves, esplanade strips or access strips, and through agreements or covenants with landowners under the New

Zealand Walkways Act 1990, the Queen Elizabeth II National Trust Act 1977 and other means.

**WPA METH 5** Provide **information and technical assistance** to persons and communities wishing to carry out activities to enhance public access to and along rivers and lakes.

**WPA METH 6** **Advocate** to agencies that hold or are responsible for providing information on public access to **provide information** to the general public on existing legal access to and along the region's lakes and rivers.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following methods:

**WPA METH 7** Include in **district plans** and conditions on **resource consents**, provisions to maintain or enhance public access to and along rivers and lakes.

**WPA METH 8** **Provide information** on existing public access points where appropriate.

**WPA METH 9** Establish **esplanade reserves, esplanade strips or access strips** following subdivision.

**WPA METH 10** As appropriate, **designate and acquire** reserves adjoining rivers and lakes.

**WPA METH 11** Put in place **agreements or covenants** with landowners that enhance public access to and along rivers and lakes.

**WPA METH 12** Consider the use of **financial instruments** and incentives such as land purchase or compensation, rates relief or grants for fencing and other costs.

**WPA METH 13** **Advocate** to agencies that hold or are responsible for providing information on public access to **provide information** to the general public on existing legal access to and along the region's lakes and rivers.

**WPA METH 14** **Provide** to the public information held by the district council on existing legal access to and along the region's lakes and rivers.

### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policy and methods

The objective, policy and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for issues of public access to and along rivers and lakes. Their aim is to promote public access.

The policy and methods focus on a combination of regulatory and non-regulatory methods to promote public access. Regulation by itself is unlikely to achieve significant progress towards the objective. To overcome some of the fragmented nature of public access, and in recognition that both the Taranaki Regional Council and the three territorial authorities have significant roles in promoting public access, a regional walkways and cycleways strategy will be prepared to promote more effective integrated management in relation to this issue. Together these methods are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### **Environmental results anticipated**

##### **WPA ER 1**

*Increased formal public access to and along rivers and lakes.*



## 7. Air and climate change

---

This section identifies resource management issues of regional significance, which have their primary effect on Taranaki's air quality. These issues are grouped under the headings of:

- maintaining air quality
- responding to the effects of climate change.

### 7.1 MAINTAINING AIR QUALITY

#### Background to the issue

Clean fresh air is an important and valued part of Taranaki's environment and quality of life.

Overall Taranaki has excellent air quality. This is because of Taranaki's windy and exposed nature, together with its dispersed and low population, its absence of heavy industry and its low number of vehicles. However, air quality in some localities is lost or reduced through activities resulting in point or diffuse source discharges of contaminants to air.

Diffuse (widespread) sources of emissions are the biggest contributors of emissions to air. Of the diffuse sources, natural sources (sea spray, vegetation, landcover and farm animals) emit far greater quantities than human sources such as industries, homes or motor vehicles.

Point sources of emissions such as from industry are more obvious than natural sources. Point source emissions in Taranaki come from a range of sources such as the petroleum industry, pig and poultry farming and abrasive blasting. Most of the point source emissions are located in the industrial parts of the region's urban centres, particularly New Plymouth and Hawera.

Emissions to air – in the form of odours, smoke, dusts or toxic contaminants as well as water vapour and hot air – may affect air quality. The effects of such emissions may range from visual distraction, offensive odours and nuisance effects to actual or potential effects on human and ecosystem health and adverse effects on roads, airports, aircraft while in the air and other infrastructure.

In some localities, 'reverse sensitivity' issues may be a problem. Reverse sensitivity refers to situations where lawfully established industries, that have addressed offsite effects as far as is practicable and reasonable, may become constrained by the emergence of new and often incompatible land uses in the neighbourhood. In Taranaki, reverse sensitivity issues are particularly associated with new residential

subdivisions near existing piggery or poultry farms, which then become a target of complaints relating to odour and other air emissions. The inappropriate location of residential activities in rural areas can also constrain the availability of rural land for intensive animal farming purposes. However, other industries and land uses may also be affected from time to time.

The significant issues in relation to maintaining air quality are:

**AQU  
ISS 1**      **Managing adverse effects on air quality arising from point sources of emissions.**

**AQU  
ISS 2**      **Managing reverse sensitivity issues in relation to air emissions and which are created by incompatible land uses establishing next to industries or rural production operations.**

### OBJECTIVE

#### AQU OBJECTIVE 1

***To maintain the existing high standard of ambient air quality in the Taranaki region, to improve air quality in those instances or areas where air quality is adversely affected, and to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on people and the environment resulting from discharges to air.***

### POLICIES

#### Adverse effects of discharges to air

#### AQU POLICY 1

*Discharges to air of contaminants should avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects by ensuring that:*

- (a) any discharge to air of potentially hazardous, noxious, dangerous or toxic contaminants does not occur at a volume, concentration or rate or in such a manner that causes or is likely to cause a hazardous, noxious, dangerous or toxic effect on human or animal health, significant ecosystems or structures;*
- (b) to the fullest extent practicable, any discharge to air of odorous contaminants does not create an offensive or objectionable effect beyond the boundary of the property of the discharger; and*
- (c) any discharge to air of dust, smoke or hot air emissions and other particulate matter does not occur at a volume or rate or in a manner that causes or is likely to cause a hazardous, noxious, dangerous, offensive or objectionable effect beyond the boundary of the property of the discharger, including the significant restriction of visibility or the soiling of property.*

## Other matters to be considered

### AQU POLICY 2

*In considering policies or proposals in relation to discharges to air, matters to be considered will include:*

- (a) recognition that some areas of the region have within them, uses or values that are more sensitive to the discharge of contaminants to air than other areas;*
- (b) surrounding environmental conditions and the potential for adverse effects on other receiving environments;*
- (c) the potential for cumulative effects;*
- (d) measures to reduce the volume and toxicity of the contaminants;*
- (e) measures to reduce the risk of unintended discharges of contaminants;*
- (f) the requirement to discharge to air having regard to use of the best practicable option to prevent or minimise as far as practicable adverse effects on the environment from the discharge of contaminants to air; and*
- (g) the nature of the source or sources.*

### Reverse sensitivity

#### AQU POLICY 3

*Land use and subdivision should be managed to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on people and the environment from reverse sensitivity effects arising from the inappropriate location of sensitive activities in proximity to legitimate activities discharging contaminants to air.*

### Explanation of the policies

Policy 1 states that the discharge of particular types of contaminants will be avoided, remedied or mitigated. There are three parts to Policy 1, which focus on the different types of contaminants discharged to air. First, discharges of contaminants to air that may be hazardous, noxious, dangerous or toxic to people, significant ecosystems and buildings must be controlled or managed, taking into account volumes, concentrations and the rate of the discharge and the manner in which contaminants are discharged. Under Policy 1(a) the adverse effects of the discharge of contaminants are to be avoided, remedied or mitigated so that the discharge does not cause hazardous, noxious, dangerous or toxic effects on people, significant ecosystems or structures. Second, discharges of contaminants that are odorous must be controlled or managed in a practicable manner focusing on 'offensive' or 'objectionable' odours. What is offensive or objectionable will depend on the frequency of exposure, the intensity of odorous substances, the duration of exposure, the nature of the odour, appropriate land uses in the vicinity, and the sensitivity of the adjacent environment to the

odour. Implementation of this part of the policy will generally be in accordance with national guidelines for odour and dust. Finally, discharges to air of smoke, dust and other particulate matter will be managed in a manner that focuses on offsite effects.

Policy 1 refers to avoiding, remedying or mitigating any adverse effects by ensuring that any discharges do not result in the particular effects described in the policy. The policy does not require discharge activities to have no adverse effects. The policy requires adverse effects to be avoided, remedied or mitigated to the extent or in the nature indicated and so some adverse effects from the discharge may still occur but the specific effects indicated will be required to be avoided, remedied or mitigated to acceptable levels. Some adverse effects will be so small or minor as to be insignificant or inconsequential and can be ignored. On the other hand, some effects will be so serious that the Council will regard them as being unacceptable.

The tests for whether adverse effects are or can be avoided, remedied or mitigated to acceptable levels are set out in paragraphs a) to c) of the policy. Paragraphs a) and c) refer to a discharge that 'is likely to' cause an adverse effect. This is a high level test of likelihood that sits above a mere possibility of something occurring. If a discharge is 'likely to' cause an adverse effect of the sort described in the policy, this means that there must be a serious or real and substantial risk that the stated consequences will happen, and it is under these circumstances that Policy a) and c) will apply.

Policy 2 recognises that there will be activities that require to discharge contaminants to air and sets out six matters pertinent to consideration of policies and proposals for air discharges. In relation to the first and second points, the policy recognises that the Taranaki environment is not uniform for the purposes of air quality management. Some areas are more sensitive than others due to differences in natural and physical resources, different community values placed on them and different types and levels of use of resources. The third point recognises that although individual discharges to air may have only minor adverse effects on their own, the cumulative effects of such discharges in combination with others may result in significant adverse effects on the environment. The fourth, fifth and sixth points consider measures that address the deliberate and unintended discharges of contaminants to air, including the use of the best practicable option to prevent or minimise adverse effects to the environment.

Policy 3 recognises that even if activities discharging to air give effect to policies 1 and 2 relating to the discharge itself, adverse effects may still arise if



controls on subdivision or land use activities do not take sufficient account of the discharge activity. The intent of this Policy is not to manage the discharge activity itself, but rather to control the siting and establishment of sensitive or incompatible land uses in the vicinity of the discharging activity. Discharging activities to which Policy 3 relates include intensive poultry farming and industrial poultry activities and intensive pig farming operations.

#### Related policies

Policies 1, 2 and 3 of **Section 5.3** [Hazardous substances and contaminated sites]; and all the policies relating to **Section 7.2** [Climate change]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; all the policies relating to **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; and **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- AQU METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation addressing point and diffuse source discharges of contaminants to air, and reverse sensitivity effects arising from discharges of contaminants to air.
- AQU METH 2** Apply **regional rules** to allow, regulate or prohibit:
- (a) the discharge of contaminants to air from industrial and trade premises;
  - (b) odour and other emissions from agricultural activities;
  - (c) agrichemical spraying operations;
  - (d) burning of vegetation and waste material;
  - (e) piggeries and poultry farms;
  - (f) waste management processes; and
  - (g) other activities as appropriate.
- AQU METH 3** Require, when appropriate, applicants for permits to discharge contaminants to air, to adopt the **best practicable option** to minimise the adverse effects of the discharges on the environment.
- AQU METH 4** Provide **advice and information**, including guidelines, to landowners, resource users and the public:
- (a) to generally promote awareness of air quality issues;
  - (b) to encourage the adoption of principles and practices that avoid or mitigate adverse effects on air quality; and
  - (c) on systems, siting, design, installation,

operation and maintenance procedures for industrial, domestic and agricultural activities that emit to air.

- AQU METH 5** **Support and promote** the preparation and adoption by sector groups of **guidelines and certification programmes** to avoid or mitigate adverse effects on air quality arising from:
- (a) farming activities that may generate significant odour such as piggeries, poultry farms and on-site land application of treated or untreated effluents or other contaminants;
  - (b) agrichemical spraying operations; and
  - (c) spray application of paint, fibreglass and similar activities.
- AQU METH 6** In conjunction with the territorial authorities, implement **memoranda of understanding** to promote effective integrated management of air quality issues.
- AQU METH 7** Apply and, where appropriate, contribute to the monitoring of **national environmental standards** relating to air quality.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following method:

- AQU METH 8** Include in **district plans** or **resource consents**, provisions or conditions to control either or both:
- (a) the siting and establishment of land uses that discharge contaminants to air that have an adverse effect on the amenity and character values of the adjacent land uses; or
  - (b) the siting and establishment of sensitive or incompatible land uses in the vicinity or neighbourhood of the discharging land use.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for air quality issues in the Taranaki region. Their aim is to maintain Taranaki's overall excellent air quality and, in some localities, enhance air quality by addressing the effects of air emissions from point sources.

Some concerns exist about discharges to air at specific sites, primarily involving odour. Therefore the methods to implement the objective and policies focus on the control of significant point sources and the avoidance of reverse sensitivity issues through the resource consents process, including the adoption of the best practicable option, to reduce adverse effects on neighbours as far as is practicable.

While territorial authorities do not control discharges to air directly, provisions in district plans relating to the siting or establishment of land uses discharging to air or of other land uses in the vicinity of the discharging land use, can avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects of discharges to air and give effect to the objectives of the Regional Policy Statement.

Other methods such as information provision, guidelines, education and advocacy address adverse effects associated with diffuse source emissions and complement the regulatory approach for point sources. Together these methods have proven to be successful to date in terms of public acceptance and the achievement of desired environmental outcomes. The approaches for point and diffuse source discharges are considered to be the appropriate approaches having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### **AQU ER 1**

*Maintenance of good to excellent general air quality according to accepted national standards.*

##### **AQU ER 2**

*A reduction in offence and risk from individual point source discharges to air.*

## 7.2 RESPONDING TO THE EFFECTS OF CLIMATE CHANGE

### Background to the issue

The general consensus of scientific opinion is that the world is getting warmer causing its climate to change. Global temperatures today are about 0.6 degrees Celsius higher than they were in the early 1900s.

While there is not unanimous agreement, there is now strong evidence that most of the warming observed is attributable to increased concentrations of greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxide produced by human activities. Human activities such as deforestation, animal husbandry, the application of nitrogenous pasture fertiliser, the decomposition of organic wastes, transport, and using fossil fuels, such as coal, for industrial processing and generating electricity have produced more and more of these gases over the last century. As more gases accumulate, the Earth gets warmer – resulting in rising sea temperatures and sea

### National environmental standard for air quality

National environmental standards are regulations made by Order in Council, on the recommendation of the Minister for the Environment, to prescribe technical standards relating to the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources nation-wide.

The *National Environmental Standard for Air Quality* was promulgated on September 2004. In accordance with that Standard, regions were required to identify 'airsheds' for their region. In simple terms, airsheds are areas within a region where national ambient air quality standards are exceeded or likely to be exceeded, and hence particular management regimes implemented.

Taranaki people enjoy clean fresh air and this is an important and valued part of our quality of life. On the basis of national ambient air quality standards, overall air quality in Taranaki is rated excellent. The need to identify airsheds where such standards cannot be met does not apply to this region.



levels, the melting of glaciers and ice caps (which also increase sea levels) and greater extremes in weather patterns, such as more storms of greater intensity and longer droughts.

At a regional level, research indicates that, over the next 70-100 years, Taranaki's temperatures could be up to 3 °C warmer, the climate could be up to 20% wetter with more varied rainfall patterns, and flooding is likely to become more frequent and severe.

The effects of climate change are manifold and likely to impose significant costs on the community. Global warming is expected to lead to a rise in the average sea level due to the thermal expansion of ocean water and melting of glacial and polar ice. Rising sea levels and more extreme weather events may increase coastal erosion, threaten vulnerable beaches and low-lying areas, and increase the need for coastal protection measures.

In rural areas, if extreme events such as floods and droughts become more severe and frequent, costs to farmers associated with dealing with stock losses, increased soil erosion and damage and disruptions to farm operations would be expected to increase. A wetter climate may also increase 'pugging' of pasture and cropping soils during winter. Hotter summer days could also increase competition for water uses in some areas between agricultural irrigation and domestic and industrial uses during drier periods. Generally warmer temperatures could further facilitate the spread of some pests, diseases and lower feed-quality sub-tropical grasses such as kikuyu grass. There may also be some benefits for agriculture and forestry through improved plant growth because of longer growing seasons and rising carbon dioxide levels and the potential for new crops and associated industries to move into new areas.

In urban areas, heavier rainfall will put added pressure on drainage and stormwater systems and increase flooding risks in some areas. Housing areas near river banks and lake shores are likely to become more prone to floods. Roading infrastructure might need more maintenance work and new structures such as bridges may need to accommodate higher flood peaks in their design.

Climate change can adversely affect ecosystems including those with conservation and biodiversity values.

The public health effects of climate change include warmer winters that might alleviate cold-related illnesses and death, and hotter summers that might cause heat stress and promote the spread of sub-tropical diseases and their vectors. Some greenhouse

gas emissions are also indirectly contributing to ozone depletion, which results in increased ultraviolet radiation and increased risk of skin cancer.

**The significant issue in relation to responding to the effects of climate change is:**

**CCH  
ISS 1**      **Planning for and managing adverse effects on the environment arising from climate change, particularly associated with rising sea levels and more variable extreme weather patterns.**

## **OBJECTIVE**

### **CCH OBJECTIVE 1**

***To avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects on the Taranaki environment arising from climate change.***

## **POLICIES**

### **Adapting to the effects of climate change**

#### **CCH POLICY 1**

*Avoid or mitigate adverse effects on the environment arising from climate change by recognising and providing for:*

- (a) the development and protection of the built environment and infrastructure in a manner that takes into account the potential effects of rising sea levels and more variable and extreme weather patterns;*
- (b) adaptation within agriculture, forestry and other primary industries to reduce the adverse effects of climate change on the use of natural and physical resources;*
- (c) a potential increase in biosecurity risks to primary production and biodiversity values; and*
- (d) possible adverse effects on ecosystems including those with conservation and biodiversity values and on public health.*

### **Mitigating the effects of climate change**

#### **CCH POLICY 2**

*To promote actions within the Taranaki region to mitigate the effects of climate change, by giving effect to the functions and responsibilities of local government under the Resource Management Act and by promoting actions in accordance with the functions of local government under other Acts within the context of New Zealand's national policy framework for climate change.*

### **Explanation of the policy**

Policy 1 recognises that there is likely to be a range of adverse effects on the environment arising from climate change. These include impacts on the built

environment, primary industries, natural ecosystems and public health.

Policy 1 also recognises that adverse effects arising from climate change are likely to be particularly significant in certain areas. Local authorities, as managers of significant infrastructural assets and through their statutory resource management and emergency management responsibilities, will, as opportunities arise and as practicable, plan and prepare for the anticipated effects of climate change. Some effects such as public health remain the responsibility of central government and, in this case, the health sector.

Climate change is a global issue that central government is addressing at an international and national level. The Resource Management Act effectively excludes regional councils from the role of regulating emissions for climate change purposes. However, in carrying out its functions under the RMA the Council is required to have particular regard to the effects of climate change and the benefits to be derived from the use and development of renewable energy. The Council must also have regard to the extent to which renewable energy enables a reduction in the discharge to air of greenhouse gases when making rules under section 70A of the Act or when considering applications for resource consents under section 104E of the Act. Furthermore, under Policy 2, local government will explore opportunities for supporting national policies and, where appropriate, promote mitigation and adaptation measures that address climate change problems.

#### Related policies

Policies 1, 2 and 3 of **Section 5.3** [Hazardous substances and contaminated sites]; all the policies relating to **Section 7.1** [Air quality]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; all the policies relating to **Section 10.3** [Amenity values], **Section 11** [Natural hazards], and **Section 14** [Energy].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- CCH METH 1** Consider including in **regional plans**, objectives, policies and rules to avoid or mitigate the adverse effects of climate change.
- CCH METH 2** In conjunction with sector groups, research organisations and others, **support** the identification, evaluation and implementation of non-regulatory measures by resource users that reduce, remedy or mitigate greenhouse gas emissions.

- CCH METH 3** Provide **advice and information**, including guidelines to landowners, resource users and the public:
- (a) to generally promote recognition of and provision for climate change issues;
  - (b) to promote energy efficiency, cleaner production technologies and waste minimisation practices that avoid or mitigate adverse effects arising from climate change; and
  - (c) on the siting, design, installation, operation and maintenance of buildings and infrastructure that avoid or mitigate adverse effects arising from climate change.
- CCH METH 4** **Advocate:**
- (a) to central government that they generally promote recognition of climate change issues;
  - (b) to central government that they promote energy efficiency, renewable energy and cleaner production technologies and waste minimisation practices that avoid or mitigate adverse effects arising from climate change; and
  - (c) to agencies involved in natural hazard management and planning that they recognise, as appropriate, the effects of climate change on natural hazard processes and risk management.
- CCH METH 5** Consider **participation in central government initiatives**, as part of a strategic approach to manage greenhouse gas emissions.
- CCH METH 6** Retain as appropriate membership of the **Communities for Climate Change Protection**, which would involve the Council taking actions including the implementation, monitoring and reporting of an action plan to reduce greenhouse gas emissions.
- CCH METH 7** Consider in the preparation of the **Regional Land Transport Strategy for Taranaki** provisions to reduce emissions of greenhouse gases.
- CCH METH 8** Gather **information** on greenhouse gas emissions to air in the Taranaki region and maintain an **Inventory** of greenhouse gas emissions in the region.
- CCH METH 9** Maintain the **Regional Waste Strategy for Taranaki** with targets that seek to minimise waste.

**CCH  
METH  
10** Implement the **Sustainable Land Management Programme** and the **Riparian Management Programme** to promote the reforestation of land and retention of soils and increase the Taranaki region's carbon sink.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following methods:

**CCH  
METH  
11** Include in **district plans**, provisions to manage the effects of climate change, including the appropriate planning of efficiency in urban development, transportation and other matters.

**CCH  
METH  
12** Include appropriate provisions in **district land transport programmes** prepared under the Land Transport Management Act 2003.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

In the long term, if unchecked, climate change increases the risk of major irreversible changes to Earth. Given the global nature of the problem, the Government and other members of the international community have set targets and implemented policies and programmes to reduce greenhouse gas emissions (by 2012 the Government aims to have returned net greenhouse gas emissions to 1990 levels). Local government too, when exercising functions and powers under the Resource Management Act, has responsibilities for adapting to or preparing for the effects of climate change.

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for responding to climate change in the Taranaki region.

The methods focus on the preparation of planning documents such as the *Regional Waste Management Strategy* and *Regional Land Transport Strategy* and, where appropriate, the inclusion of provisions addressing the adverse effects of climate change. Local government will also explore opportunities for working with the Government in the formulation of its strategic response to climate change.

The policies and methods recognise respective responsibilities for addressing climate change, including related responsibilities for resource and emergency management, provision of local infrastructure and services, and opportunities for local participation, education and action.

They are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### **CCH ER 1**

*Adoption of measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of climate change.*

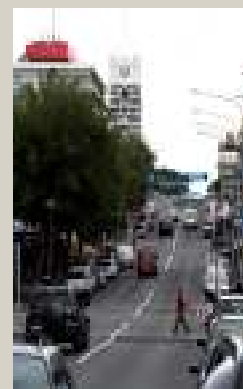
##### **CCH ER 2**

*Reduction in greenhouse gas emissions in the Taranaki region in line with goals established under the Communities for Climate Change Protection Programme.*

#### Government policies and programmes – climate change

Climate change is a global issue that central government is addressing at an international and national level.

There are a number of Government policies, programmes and initiatives to reduce greenhouse gas emissions to air. They include the development of foundation policies such as the *New Zealand Energy Strategy*, the *National Energy Efficiency and Conservation Strategy*, the *New Zealand Transport Strategy* and the *New Zealand Waste Strategy*. In addition to these strategies, the Government has emission units awarded to projects that will bring about a net reduction in greenhouse gas emissions; it has instigated Negotiated Greenhouse Agreements with major emitting industries and is considering an emission charges and trading regime.





## 8. Coastal environment

---

This section identifies resource management issues of regional significance, which have their primary effect on Taranaki's coastal environment. 'Coastal environment' refers to "...an environment (surroundings) in which the coast is a significant element or part, but because of Section 6(2), it now specifically includes all of the coastal marine area.<sup>6</sup> What constitutes the coastal environment will vary from place-to-place. It will include open coastal water, tidal waters, foreshore and seabed, dunes and beaches and may include estuaries, cliffs and other land areas near the coast.

These issues are grouped under the headings of:

- protecting the natural character of our coast
- maintaining and enhancing coastal water quality
- maintaining and enhancing public access to and along the coast environment.

Under the Resource Management Act 1991 a Regional Policy Statement must give effect to the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement. The Minister of Conservation has prepared and approved a New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement. The purpose of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement is to state policies in order to achieve the sustainable management purpose of the Act in relation to the coastal environment of New Zealand. In preparing this Regional Policy Statement and identifying issues, and developing, objectives, policies and methods in relation to the coastal environment, the Taranaki Regional Council has given effect to the policies in the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement.

### 8.1 PROTECTING THE NATURAL CHARACTER OF OUR COAST

#### Background to the issue

The Taranaki region has a long 295-kilometre coastline, comprising of rocky shores and cliffs, sandy beaches, a marine protected area, sub tidal reefs, river mouths and estuaries. Because of the rugged nature of the Taranaki coastal environment has meant that much of the coastline has retained its distinctive natural character marine area.

The natural character and associated values of the coastal environment of Taranaki make a significant contribution to the region's distinctive and unique character. These values or characteristics are

important aspects of the quality of life of the Taranaki community, contributing to people's enjoyment and appreciation of the environment. Such characteristics are also important for the tourism industry in the region. Natural features of Taranaki's coastal environment that contribute to its natural character include natural coastal processes, marine life and ecosystems including indigenous flora and fauna (including those distinctive to the Taranaki coast) and biodiversity values, coastal landscapes and seascapes, surfbreaks and areas of forest, shrub land, open space and farmland. Wāhi tapu and other sites of spiritual or cultural significance to Māori, and places or areas with special historical, scientific, ecological or other heritage values or recreational and other amenity values also contribute to the natural character of the coastal environment. Natural character therefore includes a wide range of landscape, cultural, amenity and biodiversity values. The protection of the natural character of the coast will require managing the use, development and protection of resources in a way that allows those natural processes that contribute to the natural character, to occur.

Some parts of the Taranaki coastal marine area are considered to be of outstanding coastal value. The most notable of these are the Sugar Loaf Islands Marine Protected Area and the Parininihi Marine Reserve, both of which have statutory protection and are managed for conservation purposes. However, there are also other areas without formal protection, which are considered by the Taranaki community to be of outstanding coastal value and these include the Tongaporutu and Mohakatino coastline in the north and the Waitotara and Whenuakura estuaries in the south.

Most stretches of the coastline are untouched by significant developments, which might have a detrimental effect on the natural character of the coast. However, some areas such as Port Taranaki have been substantially modified and there is increasing pressure on coastal areas from urban development and subdivision.

The pressures of urban development on the coast are increasing with growing interest in subdivision and development in coastal locations. The most modified parts of the coastline are in and around the city of New Plymouth and Oakura. The north Taranaki coastline from New Plymouth to Urenui in the north, and Okato in the south, and some parts of the south Taranaki coastline, are becoming increasingly popular for residential living.

---

<sup>6</sup> Department of Conservation: 'Report and recommendations of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement'. 1994.

Protecting natural coastal character does not mean no coastal development – rather the focus is on protecting natural character from inappropriate, subdivision, use and development. Some parts of the coast particularly in rural areas and areas at the end of rural roads, are more vulnerable to development that may be of a type or scale that leads to a gradual loss in the natural character, and scenic and amenity values that attracted people and development to the area in the first place. Inappropriate development may also degrade water and air quality, and increase natural hazard risks or accelerated erosion.

The occupation and use of the foreshore or the seabed may also adversely affect the natural character of the coast. These activities include reclamations, building or removal of structures, removal of sand and shingle, deposition of material and other disturbances to the foreshore and seabed, the allocation of coastal space for use and development (e.g. marina or aquaculture development) and the occupation of the foreshore and seabed. Some uses and developments which depend upon the use of natural and physical resources in the coastal environment are important to the social, economic and cultural wellbeing of people and communities. Functionally, certain activities such as ports, reclamations, offshore production platforms for the oil and gas industry and other structures can only be located on the coast or in the coastal marine area. Marine electricity generation and associated pipelines, cables and onshore substations may also be located in the coastal environment. Taranaki's coastal environment has potential for marine electricity generation and this form of electricity generation may become an increasingly important way to meet New Zealand's electricity demand in future.

The protection of the values of the coastal environment need not preclude appropriate use and development in appropriate places or where adverse effects can be avoided, remedied or mitigated. In Taranaki, the number of coastal structures in Taranaki is relatively small and many, such as coastal protection structures, pipelines and boat ramps, provide wider benefits to the community. However, adverse impacts may include the degradation of amenity, landscape, cultural, recreational and commercial values associated with the coast.

**The significant issue in relation to protecting the natural character of the coastal environment is:**

**CNC  
ISS 1      Managing the adverse effects of  
subdivision, use, development and  
occupation on the natural character of**

**Taranaki's coast.**

**CNC  
ISS 2      Providing for appropriate subdivision, use,  
development and occupation of the coastal  
environment.**

## **OBJECTIVES**

### **CNC OBJECTIVE 1**

***To protect the natural character of the coastal environment in the Taranaki region from inappropriate subdivision, use, development and occupation by avoiding, remedying or mitigating the adverse effects of subdivision, use and development in the coastal environment.***

### **CNC OBJECTIVE 2**

***To provide for appropriate, subdivision, use, development and occupation of the coastal environment in the Taranaki Region.***

## **POLICIES**

**Natural character of the coast**

### **CNC POLICY 1**

*Management of the coastal environment will be carried out in a manner that protects the natural character of the coastal environment from inappropriate subdivision, use, development and occupation and enhances natural character where appropriate.*

*In determining the natural character of the coastal environment, matters to be considered will include:*

- (a) the degree of modification from a natural state;*
- (b) the amenity values of the environment, which collectively give the coastal environment its natural character including rural amenity value;*
- (c) the importance of landscapes, seascapes and landforms, including visually or scientifically significant geological features and wild and scenic areas;*
- (d) the contribution of Taranaki's historic heritage to the natural character of the coastal environment;*
- (e) the degree to which the coastal environment provides for the continued functioning of ecological and physical processes including consideration of the diversity, productivity, variability and importance of marine ecosystems and marine ecosystems typical or representative of the region, and links between marine and terrestrial ecosystems;*
- (f) the natural quality of water and air; indigenous biodiversity values; the characteristics of special spiritual, historical or cultural significance to tangata whenua; and*
- (g) the degree of integration of human use, development and subdivision with the above components.*



## Appropriate subdivision, use, development and occupation

### **CNC POLICY 2**

The protection of the natural character of the coastal environment shall be achieved by having regard to the following criteria in determining appropriate subdivision, use, development or occupation of the coastal environment:

- (a) the degree and significance of actual or potential adverse effects on the natural character of the coastal environment, including cumulative effects, and the efficacy of measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate such effects;
- (b) the extent to which the subdivision, use, development or occupation recognise and provide for the relationship of tangata whenua and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga;
- (c) the degree to which adverse effects on those historic heritage values that can contribute to natural character can be avoided, remedied or mitigated;
- (d) the need for development or occupation to occur in the coastal environment;
- (e) where it is likely that an activity will result in significant adverse effects on the environment, any possible alternative locations or methods for undertaking the activity, and where the activity involves the discharge of any contaminant, any possible alternative methods of discharge;
- (f) the degree to which the subdivision, use, development or occupation will avoid adverse effects at alternative non-coastal locations;
- (g) the degree of existing modification of the coastal environment from its natural character;
- (h) the degree to which the subdivision, use, development or occupation will disrupt natural processes or will be threatened by, or will contribute to, the occurrence of natural hazards, particularly coastal erosion;
- (i) the degree to which the subdivision, use, development or occupation can be accommodated near existing developments and in spatially compact forms and the extent of further modification of the natural character of the coastal environment through sprawling and sporadic development;
- (j) the provision of adequate services, particularly the disposal of wastes;
- (k) the need to protect habitat (in the coastal marine area) of species including mobile species and those that are important for commercial, recreational, traditional or cultural purposes;
- (l) the benefits to the community of the use, development or occupation of the coastal marine area;

- (m) the degree to which financial contributions associated with any subdivision, use and development can be used to off set potential or actual unavoidable adverse effects arising from those activities; and
- (n) the benefits to be derived from the use and development of renewable energy sources, including national, regional and local benefits.

## Port Taranaki

### **CNC POLICY 3**

Appropriate recognition should be given to Port Taranaki to ensure its efficient operation and to enable appropriate development and diversification to occur to meet changing needs.

## Protection of areas in the coastal environment of importance to the region.

### **CNC POLICY 4**

Areas in the coastal environment of importance to the region will be identified and priority given to protection of the natural character, ecological and amenity values of such areas from any adverse effects arising from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.

In the assessment of areas of importance, matters to be considered will include:

- (a) wetlands, estuaries or coastal lagoons and coastal turf, forest and shrublands of regional, national or international importance;
- (b) their importance for marine mammals or birds, invertebrates and lizards for breeding, roosting or feeding, or habitats of threatened indigenous bird species;
- (c) the existence of regionally or nationally outstanding ecosystems or communities or nationally threatened plant or animal species;
- (d) scenic sites and recreational sites of outstanding or regional or national significance;
- (e) historic heritage values, including archaeological sites of national or outstanding significance;
- (f) the existence of nationally significant or outstanding coastal and marine landforms, landscapes, scientific features and associated processes;
- (g) the cultural and spiritual values of tangata whenua;
- (h) wāhi tapu and sites of importance to tangata whenua; and
- (i) the existence of marine protected areas.

## Protection of other coastal areas of value

### **CNC POLICY 5**

Recognition will be given to the protection where appropriate of other areas, features or landscapes in the coastal environment not covered by Policy 4 above, but still important to the region for one or more of the following reasons:

- (a) *recognition of the special value of estuaries, including the unique physical processes that occur as a result of the interaction of coastal and river dynamics; and the importance of estuaries in providing spawning areas and nursery areas for juveniles of aquatic species;*
- (b) *amenity and scenic values;*
- (c) *recreational and historic areas;*
- (d) *biodiversity and the functioning of ecosystems;*
- (e) *scientific and landscape features; and*
- (f) *cultural features of significance to tangata whenua.*

### Explanation of the policies

The coastal environment as a whole has distinctive features, including natural character that are to be protected from inappropriate subdivision, use and development under section 6 of the Act and in accordance with the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement.

Policy 1 lists those matters to be considered in determining an area's natural character and, therefore, the controls or measures to be adopted to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on that natural character.

Policy 2 lists those matters to be considered in determining appropriate use and development. Although it is a matter of national importance to preserve the natural character of the coastal environment, the Resource Management Act does not preclude appropriate use and development. The *New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement* further establishes the requirement for the *Regional Policy Statement for Taranaki* to define what form of subdivision, use, development or occupation would be appropriate in the coastal environment and where it would be appropriate.

Policy 3 recognises that Port Taranaki is of regional and national significance. It is the only deep water port on the west coast of New Zealand and makes a significant contribution to the social, economic and cultural wellbeing of people and communities. It is important for the region and for New Zealand that the Port is able to operate efficiently and that appropriate development and diversification is able to occur to meet changing demands. Policy 3 recognises or gives effect to a number of the matters listed in Policy 2 and in particular Policy 2 (c), (d), (e), (g) and (j). Other policies in this Regional Policy Statement will also apply.

Policy 4 recognises that certain parts of the coastal environment are important to the region having regard to their ecological, scientific, landscape, historic, cultural and spiritual, recreational, amenity and other

values, and are deserving of added protection. Some of these areas which are of local, regional and national importance are shown in Appendix II. The areas shown on the maps in Appendix II have been sourced from Taranaki Regional Council's 'Inventory of coastal areas of local or regional significance in the Taranaki region' (2004) which is a non-statutory document. Some areas are in the coastal marine area and will be identified in the Regional Coastal Plan while others where the landward component is predominant will be identified in district plans. This Regional Policy Statement is required to identify such areas and afford them protection in accordance with the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement.

Policy 5 recognises that other areas, features or landscapes in the coastal environment may also be important or valued having regard to the attributes and values listed and that recognition should be given to their protection.

### Related policies

All policies in **Section 5** [Land], **Section 6** [Freshwater] and **Section 7** [Air]; Policy 1 of **Section 8.2** [Coastal water quality]; Policy 1 of **Section 8.3** [Public access to and along the coastal environment]; all the policies in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity], **Section 10** [Natural features and landscapes and historic heritage]; **Section 11.1** [Natural hazards]; **Section 12.1** [Waste management]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; **Section 14.1** [Energy]; **Section 15.1** [Built environment]; and **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| <b>CNC<br/>METH 1</b> | Maintain the <b>Regional Coastal Plan for Taranaki</b> with objectives, policies and methods of implementation addressing the adverse effects of use and development on the natural character of the coastal marine area.   |
| <b>CNC<br/>METH 2</b> | Apply <b>regional rules</b> that recognise different coastal processes, values, and uses, and which allow, regulate or prohibit activities in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) areas of outstanding coastal value;</li> <li>(b) estuaries;</li> <li>(c) the open coast; and</li> <li>(d) Port Taranaki.</li> </ul> |
| <b>CNC<br/>METH 3</b> | Consider the need to make provision for the <b>allocation of coastal space</b> , the need for aquaculture management areas, and whether or not <b>coastal occupation charges</b>  |

should be included in the Regional Coastal Plan.

**CNC METH 4** Provide **advice and information** to generally promote awareness of the need for the protection of the natural character of the coastal environment and the importance and values of areas of outstanding coastal value and other coastal areas of value, including rare and distinctive indigenous flora and fauna species.

**CNC METH 5** **Gather or collate information** on the resources and values of the coastal environment of Taranaki including flora and fauna in the coastal environment and where possible make this available in easily accessible forms including electronic forms.

**CNC METH 6** In considering applications for coastal permits for reclamation, the removal of sand, shingle, shell or other natural materials for commercial purposes, and rights to occupy, **have regard to any alternatives** available to the applicant and the reasons for making the proposed choice.

**CNC METH 7** Participate as appropriate, in central government **planning** for a network of **marine protected areas** around New Zealand.

**CNC METH 8** **Advocate** when appropriate, to relevant agencies, the establishment of **marine protected areas** including marine reserves to preserve the natural character of the coastal environment.

**CNC METH 9** Assist, when appropriate, with the **integrated management** of marine protected areas.

**CNC METH 10** **Notify** Maritime New Zealand and the Hydrographic Office of the Royal New Zealand Navy when a coastal permit is granted for a new structure or other harbour work and when that structure or work is completed.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following method:

**CNC METH 11** **Include in district plans and resource consents**, provisions or conditions to protect the natural character of the coastal environment from inappropriate subdivision, use and development of the coastal environment.

#### **Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods**

The preservation of the natural character of the coastal environment, and protection of this area from inappropriate subdivision, use and development, is a matter of national importance.

The objective, policies and methods of implementation give effect to the purpose and principles of the Resource Management Act and establish a policy framework for maintaining and enhancing natural character and associated values of the coastal environment of Taranaki as well as providing for appropriate subdivision, use and development of the coastal environment.

The policies and methods focus on regulatory and non-regulatory methods that have regard to different values and uses that apply to different parts of the coast. What is 'appropriate' or 'inappropriate' use and development will depend not only on the activity but also upon the part of the coast where they occur. The methods and approach have proven to be successful to date in terms of public acceptance and the achievement of desired environmental outcomes. They are also considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### **Environmental results anticipated**

##### **CNC ER 1**

*Preservation of the natural character of the coastal environment of Taranaki.*

##### **CNC ER 2**

*Provision for appropriate subdivision, use and development of the coastal environment.*

## The New Plymouth Coastal Strategy

### *New Plymouth District's coast...*

***A prosperous, growing coastal community, balancing the needs of people and environment within our high energy untamed coast (Coastal Strategy vision, 2006).***

The New Plymouth District Council, after an 18-month process of research and consultation, has adopted its Coastal Strategy. The Coastal Strategy provides a strategic framework for the District Council to manage the coastal environment.

The Coastal Strategy has identified nine coastal communities, which have been identified as being distinct in the coastal environment – Tongaporutu, Urenui, Onaero, Waitara, Bell Block, Fitzroy/East End, the New Plymouth central business district and waterfront, and Oakura and Okato. For each coastal community, the Strategy outlines a vision, identifies challenges and opportunities, and sets out goals and implementation methods.

Through the Coastal Strategy, the New Plymouth District Council has identified and prioritised 100 key actions that it will implement over the next 20 years.

In the short term, the New Plymouth District Council's focus is on implementing urgent and high priority actions such as the preparation of structure plans for Urenui and Oakura, reviewing rural subdivision policies in relation to the coast, preparing an open space strategy, reviewing the district wide approach to coastal erosion, and preparing a Coastal Access Action Plan.

The Coastal Strategy, and implementation of its key actions, represents a significant commitment by the New Plymouth District Council to, not only achieving the Strategy's vision, but also in ensuring that coastal use and development will be undertaken in a manner that will protect the natural character of the New Plymouth coast.



## 8.2 MAINTAINING AND ENHANCING COASTAL WATER QUALITY

### Background to the issue

Taranaki has generally excellent coastal water quality, which is the combined result of an exposed coastal line with a high degree of near shore flushing, relatively few development pressures on the coast, a reduction in the number of point source discharges to the coastal marine area, and improvements in waste treatment and disposal options. However, some coastal water quality is lost through numerous discharges from rivers as they enter the sea, and at some localities, through point source discharges.

The main influences on coastal water quality are from river and stream discharges to the sea. These carry with them the cumulative effects of activities within their catchments, including urban stormwater run-off, suspended sediments and agricultural and industrial wastes. Rivers draining the sandstone, siltstone and mudstone catchments of the inland hill country also discharge a naturally high load of suspended solids into coastal waters.

Point source discharges are not, in most cases, a major contributor to reduced coastal water quality. The number of point source discharges to the coast is relatively small and declining. In the last two decades, there has been a major reduction in the number of dairy factory and industrial and municipal discharges. There have also been significant improvements in their waste treatment and disposal options for the remaining major discharges. Other point source discharges to the coast are associated with foreshore development, dredging, and the operation and maintenance of facilities and ships and offshore installations in the coastal marine area, including sewage or ballast water discharges or chemical contamination during cleaning and maintenance operations.

Maintaining excellent coastal water quality is important for maintaining healthy ecosystems and marine life. Maintaining excellent water quality is also important for protecting amenity, cultural, recreational and commercial values associated with the coast including the use and enjoyment of surfbreaks, swimming, boating and fishing. While the effects of diffuse (in terms of river and stream discharges) and point source discharges to the coastal marine area are generally localised, nevertheless, the effects may be of significant concern due to the nature and type of discharge, the sensitivity of the coastal environment, or the particular values associated with that locality.

The significant issues in relation to maintaining and enhancing coastal water quality are:

**CWQ ISS 1** Managing adverse effects on water quality arising from point source discharges to the coastal marine environment.

**CWQ ISS 2** Managing adverse effects on water quality arising from diffuse source discharges to the coastal marine environment, particularly associated with river and stream discharges.

## OBJECTIVE

### CWQ OBJECTIVE 1

*To maintain and enhance coastal water quality in the Taranaki region by avoiding, remedying or mitigating the adverse effects of discharges of contaminants to the coastal marine area.*

## POLICIES

### Point source discharges to the coastal marine area

#### CWQ POLICY 1

*Waste reduction and waste treatment and disposal practices, which avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse environmental effects of the point source discharge of contaminants to the coastal marine area will be required.*

*In considering policies for plans or proposals in relation to the discharge of contaminants to the coastal marine area, matters to be considered will include:*

- (a) the relationship of tangata whenua with the coastal environment;*
- (b) the natural character, ecological and amenity values of the coastal environment, including indigenous biodiversity values and fishery values;*
- (c) the effect on areas where shellfish and other kaimoana are gathered for human consumption;*
- (d) the actual or potential risks to human and aquatic health and amenity values arising from the discharge;*
- (e) the significance of any historic heritage values associated with the coastal environment;*
- (f) the degree to which the needs of other resource users might be compromised;*
- (g) the allowance for reasonable mixing zones (determined in accordance with (a) to (l) of this Policy);*
- (h) the potential for cumulative effects;*
- (i) measures to reduce the volume and toxicity of the contaminants;*
- (j) measures to reduce the risk of unintended discharges of contaminants;*
- (k) the use of the best practicable option for the treatment and disposal of contaminants; and*

- (l) the availability and effectiveness of alternative means of disposing of the contaminant.*

### Discharges from ships and offshore installations

#### CWQ POLICY 2

*Avoid, remedy or mitigate, to the fullest practicable extent, adverse effects on coastal water quality arising from ship or offshore installation discharges and maintenance.*

### Discharges from rivers and streams

#### CWQ POLICY 3

*Encourage sustainable land management practices that avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on the water quality of rivers and streams discharging and impacting on coastal water quality.*

### Explanation of the policies

Policy 1 requires waste reduction or treatment practices that avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse environmental effects arising from the discharge of contaminants to the coastal marine area from point sources. The Policy also states the matters that will be considered by the Council including having regard to the area's specific values and uses and the degree to which other resource users (both consumptive and non-consumptive) may be affected. With respect to Policy 1(g) [mixing zones], mixing should occur as quickly as practicable, and the mixing zone should not be regarded as the area where the principal treatment occurs.

Policy 2 recognises that ships and offshore installations may adversely affect coastal water quality. Where it is not possible to completely prevent the effects of discharges from ships and offshore installations on water quality, the Policy refers to avoiding, remedying or mitigating these effects, to the fullest extent practicable.

Policy 3 recognises the significant coastal water quality benefits that can be achieved by adopting sustainable land management practices in river catchments (e.g. promoting riparian management and soil conservation measures) and minimising the cumulative effects of diffuse source discharges from rivers and streams on coastal water quality.

### Related policies

All policies in **Section 5.1** [Soil erosion] and **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; Policy 1 of **Section 8.1** [Natural character of the coastal environment]; all policies in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; **Section 10.1** [Outstanding natural features and landscapes] and **Section 13** [Minerals]; Policy 1 of **Section 15.2** [Regionally significant infrastructure];

and all policies in **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

**CWQ METH 1** Maintain the **Regional Coastal Plan for Taranaki** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation addressing the discharge of contaminants to the coastal marine area.

**CWQ METH 2** Apply **regional rules** to regulate, mitigate or prohibit point source discharges to the coastal marine area.

**CWQ METH 3** Apply methods to encourage **sustainable land management practices** as outlined in section 5.2 of this Statement, including:

- (a) the application of regional rules to regulate point source discharges to land and water;
- (b) implementation of the Sustainable and Riparian Management Programmes;
- (c) provision of advice and information to promote riparian management and farm management practices that reduce diffuse source discharges of contaminants to water; and
- (d) provision of advice and information in relation to other activities such as urban development and the development and recontouring of land to promote sustainable land management practices that avoid or reduce contamination of surface water.

**CWQ METH 4** Provide **advice and information** to promote awareness of coastal water quality issues and ways to maintain and enhance coastal water quality.

**CWQ METH 5** **Notify** the Medical Officer of Health for Taranaki and the relevant territorial authority if regional water quality shows that coastal water is unfit for contact recreation or gathering of shellfish for human consumption.

**CWQ METH 6** Maintain the **Regional Marine Oil Spill Response Plan** under the Maritime Transport Act 1994 and provide adequate resources and training for emergency responders that ensures an effective response to an oil spill in the coastal marine area.

**CWQ METH 7** **Advocate or encourage**, as appropriate:

- (a) the provision of facilities for the collection of litter and on-board waste by operators of launching, mooring and berthing facilities;
- (b) the provision of areas on dry land, by operators of launching, mooring and berthing facilities, for the maintenance and cleaning of ships, and, in particular, facilities to collect and dispose of maintenance and cleaning wastes so that they do not escape into coastal water;
- (c) the undertaking of activities in a manner that will avoid or mitigate the effects of discharges of contaminants to the coastal marine area by ship operators and owners of offshore installation; and
- (d) the following of Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry border protection guidelines on the exchange of ballast water to avoid the release of exotic marine organisms into New Zealand waters by ship operators.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following method:

**CWQ METH 8** Include in **district plans**, provisions to manage the adverse effects of land use activities and management practices on coastal water quality.

### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for coastal water quality issues in the Taranaki region. Their aim is to maintain and enhance Taranaki's generally excellent coastal water quality by addressing effects arising from the discharge of contaminants to the coastal marine area.

In respect of the discharge of contaminants to the coastal marine area, the policies and methods focus on regulatory methods and contingency planning. Regulation is a simple, efficient and effective method of controlling the adverse effects of point source discharges while contingency planning can put in place systems and processes that will reduce the likelihood of effects associated with unauthorised incidents such as spills. Non-regulatory methods such as advice and information are a more appropriate method for addressing diffuse source discharges and complement the regulatory methods adopted for point sources. The policies and methods adopted have proven to be successful to date in terms of public acceptance and the achievement of desired

environmental outcomes. They are also considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### **Environmental results anticipated**

##### **CWQ ER 1**

*Consenting and monitoring of all significant point source discharges of contaminants to the coastal marine area.*

##### **CWQ ER 2**

*Maintenance or enhancement of existing good to excellent coastal water quality.*

### **8.3 MAINTAINING AND ENHANCING PUBLIC ACCESS TO AND ALONG THE COASTAL ENVIRONMENT**

#### **Background to the issue**

The Taranaki coastal environment offers an extensive and important recreational resource for fishing, diving, swimming, surfing, windsurfing, walking and boating. The coastal environment is also valued for its amenity, historic and scenic values and for the cultural and spiritual values and customary uses by tangata whenua.

Public access to and along the coastal marine area allows for the use and enjoyment of the coastal marine area by New Zealanders. Public access to the coast is often provided for by way of public roads, esplanade reserves, esplanade strips or by access strips where formal (legal) rights of access have been negotiated with the landowner. Where land is in private ownership, access is by agreement with the landowner.

Generally, there is very good public access to most parts of the coast in Taranaki. Taranaki, with its low overall population numbers and exposed coastline, has relatively few development pressures threatening amenity and natural values compared with other regions.<sup>7</sup> However, along some parts of the coast, public access to the coast may be difficult or disjointed due to topography, a lack of formal access, or poorly defined public access. In other places, public access may be constrained by developments and subdivisions adjacent to the coast. Furthermore, there is increasing interest in residential and lifestyle development along some parts of the Taranaki coast. This may exacerbate some of the problems associated with coastal access.

<sup>7</sup> Taranaki Regional Council: 'Inventory of Coastal Areas of Local or Regional Significance in the Taranaki Region - Summary and Discussion'. 2004.

The demand for or need for public access to and along the Taranaki coast varies depending upon locality and particular values attached to that locality. In some cases, it will be appropriate to promote and enhance public use and enjoyment of the coast, particularly where there are synergies with regards to promoting and enhancing public use and enjoyment of the coastal environment with high natural character and amenity values such as Taranaki's valued surfbreaks. In other cases, it may be more appropriate to restrict public access e.g. to safeguard rare and endangered species and for public health and safety issues. Providing for the maintenance and enhancement of public access to and along the coastal environment also needs to be balanced against the 'private property rights' of land occupiers and appropriate consultation and agreement sought with landowners.

**The significant issues in relation to public access to and along the coastal environment are:**

**CPA  
ISS 1**      **Providing for the maintenance and enhancement of public access to and along the coastal environment.**

**CPA  
ISS 2**      **Avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects that may arise from public access to and along the coastal environment.**

#### **OBJECTIVE**

##### **CPA OBJECTIVE 1**

***To maintain and enhance public access to and along the coastal environment in the Taranaki region, while avoiding remedying or mitigating adverse effects that may arise from that access.***

#### **POLICY**

**Maintenance and enhancement of public access to the coast**

##### **CPA POLICY 1**

***Encourage, as far as is practicable, public access to and along the coastal environment, except where circumstances make restrictions necessary to:***

- (a) preserve the natural character of the coastal environment and ecological values associated with coastal areas of outstanding coastal values and areas with significant indigenous biodiversity values;***
- (b) protect private property rights;***
- (c) avoid conflicts between competing uses;***
- (d) protect cultural and spiritual values of tangata whenua;***
- (e) protect archaeological and historic heritage values;***

- (f) protect the health and safety of the public where these may be adversely affected by an activity in the coastal environment; and
- (g) provide for other circumstances that are sufficient to justify the restriction, notwithstanding the national importance of maintaining access.

#### Explanation of the policy

The maintenance and enhancement of public access to and along the coastal environment is a matter of national importance under section 6(d) of the Resource Management Act. Policy 1 gives effect to section 6(d) of the Act, and seeks that public access be maintained and enhanced to and along the coastal environment. The Policy further recognises that, in some circumstances, restrictions on public access to or along the coastal marine area may be desirable or may be required as a consequence of a resource use or development, or because of potential adverse effects on public health and safety. In such circumstances, alternative provisions for public access should be made.

#### Related policies

Policy 1 in **Section 6.6** [Public access to rivers and lakes]; Policy 1 in **Section 8.1**: [Natural character of the coastal environment]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; all policies in **Section 10.1** [Outstanding natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; and **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council shall:

- CPA METH 1** Maintain the **Regional Coastal Plan for Taranaki** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation addressing maintenance and enhancement of public access to the coastal marine area.
- CPA METH 2** As appropriate, require new or renewed **resource consents** for the use or development of the coastal marine area to include a condition addressing public access.
- CPA METH 3** Prepare and implement, in conjunction with the region's three territorial authorities, a **regional walkways cycleways strategy** that promotes public access to the coastal marine area.
- CPA METH 4** **Advocate**, as appropriate, the establishment of public access to and along the coastal environment through

such means as esplanade reserves, esplanade strips or access strips and through agreements or covenants with landowners under the New Zealand Walkways Act 1990, the Queen Elizabeth II National Trust Act 1977 and other means.

- CPA METH 5** Provide **information and technical assistance** to persons and communities wishing to carry out activities to enhance public access to and along the coastal environment.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following methods:

- CPA METH 6** Include in **district plans** and conditions on **resource consents**, provisions to maintain or enhance public access to and along the coastal environment.
- CPA METH 7** Establish **esplanade reserves, esplanade strips or access strips** following subdivision.
- CPA METH 8** **Where appropriate designate and acquire** reserves to and along the coastal environment.
- CPA METH 9** Put in place **agreements or covenants** with landowners that enhance public access to the coastal environment.
- CPA METH 10** Consider the use of **financial instruments and incentives such as land purchase or compensation, rates relief or grants for fencing and other costs**.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policy and methods

The objective, policy and methods of implementation give effect to the Resource Management Act and establish a policy framework for public access issues to and along the coastal environment. Their aim is to promote public access.

The policy and methods focus on a combination of regulatory and non-regulatory methods to promote public access. Regulation by itself is unlikely to achieve significant progress towards the objective. However, through the resource consents process there will be opportunities to not only consider measures to maintain public access but, in some cases, provide new public access or enhance existing public access.

To overcome some of the fragmented nature of public access and in recognition that both the Taranaki Regional Council and the three territorial authorities have significant roles in promoting public access, a regional walkways and cycleways strategy will be



prepared to promote more effective integrated management of this issue. Together these methods are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

**Environmental results anticipated**

**CPA ER 1**

*Increased formal public access to and along the coastal marine area.*



## 9. Indigenous biodiversity

### 9.1 MAINTAINING AND ENHANCING INDIGENOUS BIODIVERSITY

#### Background to the issue

Biological diversity (or biodiversity) is the variability among living organisms and their habitats, and the ecological systems of which they are part.

Indigenous biodiversity here refers to biodiversity that is native to New Zealand, and much of which is found nowhere else in the world. Native forest and shrub land cover extensive areas of Taranaki (approximately 40%). These areas, along with Taranaki's rivers and streams, wetlands and coastal marine area provide significant habitats for indigenous flora and fauna species, including threatened species.

Since human settlement and the introduction of accompanying pests, indigenous biodiversity has been in a steady state of decline. Managing land for specific purposes (e.g. residential subdivision and landscaping, pastures optimised for agricultural productivity, and plantation forests) almost always reduces biodiversity and the richest ecosystem habitats as a consequence.

Historical land clearance and drainage have contributed to much of the reduction of indigenous habitats and the disproportionate loss of some types of terrestrial habitats such as wetlands, lowland forests and coastal environments. Because of their rarity, the protection of these habitats as self-sustaining ecosystems assumes added value and significance. Freshwater habitats and indigenous aquatic life are also affected by use and development of land and water, e.g. point and diffuse source discharges that reduce water quality, loss of habitat such as wetlands and riparian margins, and the presence of barriers to fish passage.

The impact of pest animals and weeds is the key threat to the condition of remaining indigenous habitats and the continued survival of some threatened species in Taranaki. The release and proliferation of pest fish such as koi carp and other undesirable aquatic plant and algal species in the region is also a potential issue of concern in some waterways.

Many remnant areas are also isolated and are surrounded by highly modified environments such as farmland. Furthermore, many are of a size or shape that makes their long term ecological viability uncertain unless ecological linkages with other areas can be maintained or enhanced.

There is a lack of accurate and reliable information on the marine environment. However, there is some evidence to suggest that significant threats to marine biodiversity exist from illegal fishing or over fishing (particularly kaimoana and commercial fish stocks), the by-catch of non-target fish and of threatened wildlife, and habitat destruction attributable to inappropriate fishing practices. Biosecurity incursions of harmful marine organisms pose a further risk.

Many important biodiversity issues faced in Taranaki arise on privately owned land in productive agricultural areas. Others are on publicly owned lands or in marine and freshwater areas managed by agencies such as the Department of Conservation and Ministry of Fisheries and the Taranaki Regional Council. These areas may also be used and developed for community benefits, including social and economic benefits. The Taranaki Regional Council and the region's three district councils have statutory responsibilities to maintain indigenous biodiversity when carrying out their functions under the Act and to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity from resource use and development. This means that policies for indigenous biodiversity protection and enhancement must consider other community and regional interests (including social and economic benefits) from the use and development of resources in achieving the overall sustainable management purpose of the Act.

Other agencies, community groups and trusts have also been established to assist in biodiversity protection. The wide range of stakeholders who are involved in or who may influence biodiversity outcomes means there is a need to work with these agencies and groups and with landowners and resource users to encourage integration and co-ordination to achieve common biodiversity goals in an efficient and effective way.

While historical land clearance and drainage have significantly reduced the extent of the region's indigenous habitats and ecosystems, considerable areas still remain. Some 40% of the region is covered in native forest and shrub land with approximately half this area (143,000 ha) being on private land outside of public conservation areas. The presence of significant vegetation on most of this private land is there as a result of the stewardship of the landowner. Considerable work is undertaken by landowners to maintain these areas much of which is unseen by the wider public. These activities range from voluntary retiring and foregoing opportunities to develop and use natural areas, to the creation of wetlands, the planting of riparian margins and pest and weed control. Many landholders have also supported biodiversity

protection through covenants with the QEII Trust and participation in initiatives by the Taranaki Tree Trust and Taranaki Kiwi Trust.

Maintaining indigenous biodiversity on private land will require the active assistance of willing landowners. There is therefore a need for continued recognition and support for private landowners if objectives for the maintenance of indigenous biodiversity in Taranaki are to be successfully achieved.

**The significant issues in relation to maintaining or enhancing indigenous biodiversity in the Taranaki region are:**

<b>BIO ISS 1</b>	<b>Protecting under-represented habitats of terrestrial and aquatic indigenous flora and fauna.</b>
<b>BIO ISS 2</b>	<b>Reducing the impact of pest animals and plants, particularly where they threaten ecosystems, habitats and areas that have regionally significant indigenous biodiversity values.</b>
<b>BIO ISS 3</b>	<b>Encouraging connectivity between remnant habitats to maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity values.</b>
<b>BIO ISS 4</b>	<b>Reducing threats to freshwater and marine habitats, flora and fauna.</b>
<b>BIO ISS 5</b>	<b>Recognising the community benefits of appropriate use and development of resources when maintaining and enhancing indigenous biodiversity.</b>
<b>BIO ISS 6</b>	<b>Working with others to maintain and enhance indigenous biodiversity values.</b>

Indigenous biodiversity means the variability among living organisms and the ecological complexes of which they are a part (including diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems) that are indigenous or native to New Zealand. The objectives, policies and methods in this part of the Regional Policy Statement therefore focus specifically on this dimension or aspect of the environment. It is recognised that indigenous biodiversity values may be an important component of other issues, objectives and policies in this Regional Policy Statement, for example those dealing with the natural character of the coast, water allocation, wetlands and natural features and landscapes. This is unavoidable given the complexity and interconnectedness of the environment and the requirement of the Act that the Council focus on specific resource management issues of significance for the region. This section of the Regional Policy Statement on indigenous biodiversity must

therefore be considered in the context of other related issues, objectives, policies and methods.

## **OBJECTIVE**

### **BIO OBJECTIVE 1**

***To maintain and enhance the indigenous biodiversity of the Taranaki region, with a priority on ecosystems, habitats and areas that have significant indigenous biodiversity values.***

## **POLICIES**

### **Promotion of indigenous biodiversity**

#### **BIO POLICY 1**

*The maintenance, enhancement and restoration of indigenous biodiversity will be promoted throughout the Taranaki region and at different scales within the region and will include ecological landscapes, ecosystems, and ecological processes, habitats, communities, species and populations.*

### **Adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity**

#### **BIO POLICY 2**

*Adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity in the Taranaki region arising from the use and development of natural and physical resources will be avoided, remedied or mitigated as far as is practicable.*

### **Ecosystems, habitats and areas with significant indigenous biodiversity values**

#### **BIO POLICY 3**

*Priority will be given to the protection, enhancement or restoration of terrestrial, freshwater and marine ecosystems, habitats and areas that have significant indigenous biodiversity values.*

### **Identifying significant indigenous biodiversity values**

#### **BIO POLICY 4**

*When identifying ecosystems, habitats and areas with significant indigenous biodiversity values, matters to be considered will include:*

- the presence of rare or distinctive indigenous flora and fauna species; or*
- the representativeness of an area; or*
- the ecological context of an area.*

*Once identified as significant, consideration should be given to the sustainability of the area to continue to be significant in future when deciding on what action (if any) should reasonably and practicably be taken to protect the values of the area.*

### **Other ecosystems, habitats or areas with indigenous biodiversity values**

#### **BIO POLICY 5**

*The maintenance, enhancement or restoration of indigenous biodiversity will be promoted in ecosystems, habitats and areas not covered by Policies 3 and 4 above, but still important for the*

continuing functioning of ecological processes, including those aspects important for the maintenance, enhancement or restoration of:

- (a) connections within, or corridors between, habitats of indigenous flora and fauna;
- (b) ecosystems, habitats and areas that provide buffering of habitats of indigenous flora and fauna;
- (c) botanical, wildlife, fishery and amenity values;
- (d) biological and genetic diversity;
- (e) water quality, water levels and flows; and
- (f) soils, substrate, minerals, nutrients or other physical factors or processes necessary for the survival of any indigenous flora or fauna species or community.

#### Working with others

##### **BIO POLICY 6**

*The Taranaki Regional Council will work with landowners, resource managers and resource users and will co-ordinate and liaise with other agencies and community groups to promote the maintenance and enhancement of indigenous biodiversity in an integrated and cost-effective way.*

#### Appropriate use and development

##### **BIO POLICY 7**

*In the maintenance and enhancement of indigenous biodiversity in Taranaki consideration will be given to the social and economic benefits of appropriate use and development of resources.*

#### Eco-sourcing

##### **POLICY 8**

*When re-establishment or restoration of indigenous vegetation and habitat is carried out, preference should be given to the use of local genetic stock.*

#### Explanation of the policies

Policy 1 states that the Council will promote indigenous biodiversity throughout the region and in so doing will recognise the many levels (e.g. ecosystems, habitats, communities, species and populations), at which indigenous biodiversity exists in both unmodified and modified environments. Policy 1 also recognises that while the policy and management focus is on protecting habitats and species rare and uncommon, there is a general public desire to also maintain more common indigenous biodiversity elements in the landscape such as tui, bellbird and kereru in urban gardens.

Policy 1 is supported by a number of mechanisms that can be used to maintain, enhance or restore indigenous biodiversity. These range from the provision of information and advice through to RMA plans and other forms of legal protection such as provided for under the Wildlife Act and Conservation Act.

To give effect to Policy 1, Policy 2 seeks to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity arising from use and development of natural and physical resources. Adverse effects are to be avoided, remedied or mitigated, as far as is practicable. This recognises that it will not always be practicable or appropriate to avoid, remedy or mitigate all adverse effects in all situations. However, avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse environmental effects as far as practicable does not necessarily mean that any use and development of resources that avoids, remedies or mitigates adverse environmental effects as far as practicable, will be acceptable - adverse environmental effects must be managed in a way that gives effect to the Act's sustainable management purpose. Consideration should be given to such things as the nature and scale of effects, the significance of the values affected and the overall purpose of sustainable management.

Policy 3 recognises that a targeted approach to indigenous biodiversity is appropriate in recognition that resources are limited and that some terrestrial, freshwater and marine ecosystems, habitats and areas are more highly valued or at risk than others. That is, controls or measures to be adopted to protect, enhance or restore indigenous biodiversity values will be focused on particular ecosystems, habitats and areas deemed to be 'significant'. These include not just terrestrial areas but also aquatic habitats such as rivers, lakes, wetlands, estuaries and coastal areas.

Policy 4 sets out criteria considered in determining and identifying ecosystems, habitats and areas with significant indigenous biodiversity values. To be considered significant, a site must have values that meet at least one of the first three criteria (criterion (a), (b) or (c)) **and** be sustainable (criterion (d)), which takes into account the quality of the area, its naturalness and inherent ecological viability.

The **rarity and distinctiveness** criterion (criterion (a)) refers to the presence of threatened indigenous flora and fauna species or the presence of species distinctive because they are at their national distributional limit, only occur in Taranaki, or, although common elsewhere, are particularly uncommon in Taranaki. The **representativeness** criterion (criterion (b)) refers to an area being significant because it supports ecosystems that are now much reduced in relation to their former extent. The **ecological context** criterion (criterion (c)) refers to an area being significant because it enhances connectivity between fragmented indigenous habitats; buffers or similarly enhances the ecological values of a specific site of value; or provides seasonal or core habitat for specific indigenous species. In applying the criteria, the 'weighting' given to certain matters will differ between

a regional or district perspective. Once identified as significant, the sustainability of the area to continue to be significant in future should be considered in deciding what management response (if any) should be taken to protect the values of the area. This will involve an overall assessment of costs, benefits and risks. For example an area may be considered sustainable if key ecological processes remain viable or still influence the site, key ecosystems within the area are known to be or are likely to be resilient to existing or potential threats under appropriate management, and existing and potential land and water uses around the site can, if necessary, be modified to protect ecological values. This criterion considers the size and shape of the area and its degree of isolation; the type of ecosystems, habitats and species present and their ecological requirements; the presence of threats or disturbances to the area; and the conservation management required to achieve self-sustainability. For example, the Taranaki Regional Council, when applying the criteria will consider what is regionally significant, while district councils would consider areas significant at the local level.

Policy 5 seeks to promote the maintenance, enhancement or restoration of ecosystems, habitats and areas, other than those identified in Policies 3 and 4 as 'significant', which contain aspects that are important for the overall functioning of ecological processes (e.g. wildlife corridors that improve ecological linkages). Policy 5 identifies some aspects important for the continued functioning of ecological processes. Other aspects not identified may still apply.

Policy 6 recognises that making positive contributions to maintaining and enhancing biodiversity will often require working with the community and offering practical support and encouragement for such things as fencing, planting and pest control work. Policy 6 has also been adopted to achieve co-ordination of policies and programmes on indigenous biodiversity. This is necessary in light of the many stakeholders involved and limitations on the resources that could potentially be applied to the issue. An integrated approach will result in more cost-effective solutions in achieving the objective of this Regional Policy Statement, for indigenous biodiversity in Taranaki.

Policy 7 recognises the need to consider the social and economic benefits of appropriate use and development of resources in achieving the Regional Policy Statement's objectives and policies to maintain and enhance indigenous biodiversity values in Taranaki. The balancing of biodiversity values and community benefits will need to take into account the issues, objectives and policies for biodiversity set out in this section of the Statement and the relevant provisions of other sections.

Policy 8 states that maintenance of genetic integrity of Taranaki flora and fauna during restoration work will prevent genetic contamination of Taranaki stock and reduce the loss of regional adaptation.

#### Related policies

All policies in **Sections 5.1** [Soil erosion], **Section 5.2** [Soil health], **Section 5.3** [Hazardous substances and contaminated sites]; **Section 6.1** [Sustainable water allocation]; **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; **Section 6.4** [Wetlands]; **Section 6.5** [Land drainage and associated diversions]; **Section 6.6** [Use of river and lake beds]; **Section 6.7** [Public access to rivers and lakes]; **Section 7.1** [Air quality]; **Section 7.2** [Climate change]; **Section 8.1** [Natural character of the coastal environment]; **Section 8.2** [Coastal water quality]; **Section 8.3** [Public access to the coastal environment]; **Section 10.1** [Natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.2** [Historic heritage]; **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; **Section 11** [Natural hazards]; **Section 12** [Waste management]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; **Section 14** [Energy]; **Section 15.1** [Sustainable urban development]; **Section 15.2** [Regionally significant infrastructure]; and **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- BIO METH 1** **Identify and monitor** natural areas and key species, waterways, wetlands, and other areas with significant or outstanding indigenous biodiversity values.
- BIO METH 2** **Monitor and gather information** on barriers to fish passage and promote their removal or an alternative efficient and effective way to ensure fish passage.
- BIO METH 3** Consider the use of **financial incentives**, such as grants, subsidies and rate relief, to promote the maintenance and enhancement of indigenous biodiversity including to:
- (a) assist with the protection of indigenous biodiversity values on privately owned land with a priority on ecosystems, habitats and areas with significant biodiversity values;
  - (b) promote the protection of wetlands; and
  - (c) promote the maintenance and enhancement of freshwater biodiversity including through the use of riparian planting and the removal or alteration of structures that are a barrier to indigenous fish passage.

<p><b>BIO METH 4</b></p>	<p>Prepare and implement <b>pest management strategies or undertake other actions</b> under the Biosecurity Act 1993 to address the management of harmful animals or plants that have regionally significant actual or potential adverse and unintended impacts on indigenous biodiversity values.</p>	<p>maintaining, enhancing, or protecting indigenous biodiversity;</p> <p>(b) the mechanisms for protecting natural areas;</p> <p>(c) the importance and values of regionally significant natural areas, waterways, wetlands and areas of outstanding coastal value;</p> <p>(d) the importance and values of indigenous flora and fauna species, particularly those species that are locally rare or distinctive;</p> <p>(e) the benefits of and the techniques for undertaking riparian planting; and</p> <p>(f) techniques for constructing and maintaining in-stream structures in a manner that avoid or reduce adverse effects on in-stream values, fish passage and other users.</p>
<p><b>BIO METH 5</b></p>	<p>Consider other <b>pest and weed control</b> to protect indigenous biodiversity values on privately owned land with a priority on ecosystems, habitats and areas with significant indigenous biodiversity values.</p>	
<p><b>BIO METH 6</b></p>	<p>Maintain a <b>regional plan or plans</b> with objectives, policies and methods of implementation addressing accelerated erosion, soil health, discharges to land, air and water, the taking of water, fish passage, riparian management, use of river and lake beds, the protection of wetlands and the management of the coastal marine area including estuaries and other areas of outstanding coastal value.</p>	
<p><b>BIO METH 7</b></p>	<p>Apply <b>regional rules</b> to regulate, mitigate or prohibit resource use and development activities that have potential or actual adverse environmental effects on indigenous flora and fauna in relation to soil conservation, air quality, fresh water and the coastal marine area.</p>	
<p><b>BIO METH 8</b></p>	<p>Prepare a <b>Biodiversity Operational Strategy</b> to guide the biodiversity actions of the Council and which identifies programmes and actions for indigenous biodiversity on land, freshwater biodiversity and coastal and marine biodiversity.</p>	<p><b>BIO METH 11</b></p> <p>Prepare biodiversity related '<b>practice notes</b>' and include consideration of biodiversity issues in '<b>checklists</b>' for consent processing.</p>
<p><b>BIO METH 9</b></p>	<p>Provide <b>technical advice, information and assistance</b> through the Council's sustainable land management advisory services to promote:</p> <p>(a) the voluntary identification, protection and restoration of ecosystems, habitats and areas with significant biodiversity values;</p> <p>(b) the voluntary identification, protection and restoration of other ecosystems, habitats and areas with indigenous biodiversity values; and</p> <p>(c) the voluntary retirement and planting of riparian margins.</p>	<p><b>BIO METH 12</b></p> <p>When implementing the Taranaki Regional Council's <b>Riparian Management Programme and Sustainable Land Management Programme</b>, promote the protection, re-establishment or restoration of areas of indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna.</p>
<p><b>BIO METH 10</b></p>	<p>Provide <b>information and guidelines</b> to resource users and the public that generally promote awareness of:</p> <p>(a) the principles and practices for</p>	<p><b>BIO METH 13</b></p> <p><b>Advocate</b> to relevant agencies, the use of <b>other legislation</b> (such as the Conservation Act 1987, the National Parks Act 1980, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Queen Elizabeth II National Trust Act 1977, the Fisheries Act 1983 and the Biosecurity Act 1993) or mechanisms (such as the Forest Heritage Trust Fund, Biodiversity Fund and Sustainable Management Fund) to protect or restore areas of significant indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna.</p>
		<p><b>BIO METH 14</b></p> <p><b>Advocate</b> when appropriate, to relevant agencies, the sustainable use of the marine environment and the establishment of <b>marine protected areas, including marine reserves</b>, to protect areas with regionally significant indigenous biodiversity values.</p>
		<p><b>BIO METH 15</b></p> <p>Participate, as a trustee, in the affairs of the <b>Taranaki Tree Trust</b>, and provide servicing and support to the Trust.</p>

**BIO METH 16**      **Monitor and gather information** on the state of indigenous biodiversity, pressures on it, and responses to management.

**BIO METH 17**      **Encourage the involvement of** central government and other relevant agencies in **research or investigations** relating to indigenous biodiversity issues and seek the consolidation and sharing of existing and new information about indigenous biodiversity.

**BIO METH 18**      Promote **integrated management** of indigenous biodiversity in the Taranaki region by:

(a) liaising and maintaining linkages with territorial authorities, the Department of Conservation, the Ministry of Fisheries, Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry, iwi and other relevant agencies, groups and individuals regarding indigenous biodiversity issues;

(b) encouraging and facilitating, when appropriate, the development of joint databases and information systems including community based sources of data such as those from Trusts, societies and individuals and make available and exchange technical information and advice; and

(c) undertaking joint initiatives where and when appropriate.

#### **Management responsibilities – control of the use of land to maintain indigenous biodiversity**

In accordance with section 62(1)(i)(iii) of the Resource Management Act, the three **territorial authorities** of the region will be responsible for specifying the objectives, policies and methods for the control of the use of land to maintain indigenous biological diversity except where the control of the use of land relates to the Taranaki Regional Council's functions under the Act regarding:

- the coastal marine area; and
- the beds of rivers, lakes and other waterbodies.

Territorial authorities will consider the following methods:

**BIO METH 19**      Include in **district plans**, objectives, policies and methods, including rules, relating to the control of the use of land to maintain indigenous biodiversity in areas of significant indigenous or other vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna.

**BIO METH 20**      Include in **resource consents**, conditions relating to the use of land to maintain indigenous biodiversity.

Territorial authorities may also wish to consider the following methods:

**BIO METH 21**      Provide **information and other assistance** to resource users and the public that generally promote the maintenance, enhancement and restoration of indigenous biodiversity.

**BIO METH 22**      **Advocate**, as appropriate, for the protection of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna.

**BIO METH 23**      Grant **rate relief** on land mandatorily or voluntarily protected, for the purpose of maintaining or enhancing indigenous biodiversity values

#### **Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods**

The objective, policies and methods of implementation give effect to the requirements of the Resource Management Act. In particular, they address matters of national importance under the Resource Management Act – namely, the protection of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna (section 6(c) of the Act) and, in part, the preservation of the natural character of the coastal environment, wetlands, and lakes and rivers (section 6(a) of the Act).

The objective, policies and methods establish a policy framework for indigenous biodiversity in the Taranaki region. Their aim is to maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity in the Taranaki region.

The policies are not listed in any priority order and each serves a different but complementary purpose. Overall, the preferred approach is to focus on protecting, enhancing or restoring ecosystems, habitats and areas that have significant indigenous biodiversity values, for the reasons set out in the explanation of Policy 3 and because the protection of significant areas and habitats is a matter of national importance that the Council must recognise and provide for under the RMA. The maintenance of indigenous biodiversity in other areas will be promoted under Policy 5. Adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity arising from the use and development of resources are to be avoided, remedied or mitigated as far as practicable under Policy 2. This reflects the Council's broad obligations under the Act to avoid,



remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of activities on the environment.

A range of methods are proposed to implement the policies and achieve the objectives. Where these methods involve private land, this Regional Policy Statement seeks to build on the ethic of stewardship of landowners and to work with the landowners to maintain and enhance indigenous biodiversity in Taranaki. Where regulatory tools are to be applied these should be carefully targeted to important areas or values to be protected, not prevent appropriate use and development and be developed in consultation with those affected. They should also be supported wherever possible by non-regulatory methods such as those identified in this Regional Policy Statement.

This overall approach is more likely to result in stakeholder acceptance and support for biodiversity protection initiatives.

Through the implementation of the policies and methods, the Taranaki Regional Council can manage adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity. The policies and methods build on current approaches applied to the protection and enhancement of wetlands and for improving fish habitat and passage and have been expanded upon to address other elements of indigenous biodiversity.

Managing indigenous biodiversity crosses a number of administrative boundaries involving a plethora of different statutes and regulations. In accordance with the management responsibilities set out below, the three territorial authorities of the region are responsible for specifying the objectives, policies and methods for the control of the use of land to maintain indigenous biodiversity (except where controls relate to the Taranaki Regional Council functions under the Act). The methods may include land use controls and other methods relating to Significant Natural Areas or other vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna. These methods have proven to be successful to date in terms of achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

Note that the Taranaki Regional Council's resource management functions do not apply to the control or management of fisheries under the Fisheries Act 1983. Furthermore, government agencies such as the Department of Conservation (in relation to the management of public conservation areas and wildlife) and the Ministry of Agriculture (in relation to controls on the harvesting of indigenous forests) have significant responsibilities relating to indigenous biodiversity. Accordingly, effective integrated

management (Method 15) between the different agencies assumes added importance.

#### **Environmental results anticipated**

##### **BIO ER 1**

*Maintenance of the areal extent of indigenous ecosystems and habitats in the Taranaki region and the indigenous species of flora and fauna which occur in the region.*

##### **BIO ER 2**

*An increase in the number and areal extent of ecosystems, habitats and areas with regionally significant indigenous biodiversity values in the Taranaki region, and which are formally protected or covenanted.*

##### **BIO ER 3**

*Maintenance and enhancement of the ecological condition of ecosystems, habitats and areas with regionally significant indigenous biodiversity values in the Taranaki region.*

##### **BIO ER 4**

*An increase in the areal extent of planted riparian margins along Taranaki ring plain waterways.*

##### **BIO ER 5**

*Reduction in barriers to indigenous fish passage in the Taranaki region.*

##### **BIO ER 6**

*Maintenance and enhancement of indigenous biodiversity values of water, ecosystems and habitats of indigenous aquatic flora and fauna.*

### Significant Natural Areas

The South Taranaki and New Plymouth district councils have identified areas with locally important indigenous biodiversity values, which are referred to as 'Significant Natural Areas'. Rules apply protecting these areas from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.

In south Taranaki, the District Council has identified 35 Significant Natural Areas and included these in the South Taranaki District Plan. The Significant Natural Areas are restricted to land, which is wholly, or partly, in private ownership and not legally protected by conservation covenants.

Through its District Plan, the South Taranaki District Council has established the Significant Natural Areas Programme. The District Council's Programme focuses on advice, information and support to promote the voluntary protection of indigenous vegetation in south Taranaki. Financial assistance is available for projects that protect or enhance Significant Natural Areas such as fencing.

Through the subdivision consent process the District Council also has an opportunity to negotiate the formal protection of affected Significant Natural Areas and other areas with indigenous biodiversity values.

In addition to the above, the *South Taranaki District Plan* contains rules that control land use aspects of an activity (e.g. subdivision and vegetation clearance) that may adversely impact on the 35 significant natural areas and indigenous biodiversity generally.



## 10. Natural features and landscapes, historic heritage and amenity value

This section identifies resource management issues of regional significance, which have their primary effect on Taranaki's natural features and landscapes, historic heritage and amenity values. These issues are grouped under the headings of:

- protecting our outstanding and important natural features and landscapes
- protecting our historic heritage
- maintaining and enhancing amenity values.

### 10.1 PROTECTING OUR OUTSTANDING AND IMPORTANT NATURAL FEATURES AND LANDSCAPES

#### Background to the issue

For the purposes of this Regional Policy Statement, 'outstanding' refers to those natural features or landscapes of exceptional value or eminence or distinction on a national regional or district level.

Taranaki contains many natural features and landscapes that are outstanding. Some of these are nationally and internationally outstanding while others are outstanding at a regional or district level. Outstanding natural features and landscapes include Mt Taranaki, the Pouakai and Kaitake Mountain Ranges and parts of the distinctive lahar mounds of the ring plain.

Some outstanding natural features and landscapes are associated with parts of Taranaki's coastal environment and these include the Sugar Loaf Islands and Paritutu, parts of the coastline and cliffs of north and south Taranaki and some river mouths and estuaries.

In the inland hill country, vast panoramas of accordant hill tops and steep sided valleys can be viewed from a number of saddle and summit points and these views are considered to be valued features of the Taranaki landscape.

A number of Taranaki rivers and lakes and their margins (eg the Hangatahua (Stony) River, Maketawa Stream and Lake Rotokare) are also considered to be outstanding in terms of their natural values, features and landscapes.

Inappropriate subdivision, use and development may adversely impact on people's use, enjoyment and appreciation of outstanding natural features and landscapes and/or result in the degradation of their values. Examples include the increasing level of subdivision along the coast and site-specific

developments that can affect archaeological and heritage sites, indigenous bush or amenity. Activities such as building, subdivisions, mining, logging and quarrying, reclamations, land clearance, grazing, afforestation and road and infrastructure development, can have varying effects depending upon the scale and location of the activity.

Other natural features and landscapes, while not considered outstanding, may nevertheless still be of value at a regional or district level. e.g. wetlands. These areas may be of value for their scenic, amenity, recreational, scientific and Maori cultural and spiritual values or other values which may contribute to the quality of the Taranaki environment make an important contribution to the social wellbeing of individuals and communities and are appreciated by residents and visitors alike. Some of these areas are identified in Appendix I and Appendix II. The value of these features and landscapes should be given appropriate consideration in managing the use, development and protection of resources.

Many natural features and landscapes of rural Taranaki exist within productive farmland. Indeed many valued aspects of Taranaki rural landscapes are present as a result of generations of farming. Farming and its associated activities are important to the region and normal farming operations are able to fit within and contribute to the region's rural landscape values.

**The significant issues in relation to outstanding and important natural features and landscapes in the Taranaki region are:**

**NFL  
ISS 1**     **Protecting our outstanding natural features and landscapes from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.**

**NFL  
ISS 2**     **The appropriate management of other natural features and landscapes of value to the region.**

#### OBJECTIVE

##### **NFL OBJECTIVE 1**

***To protect the outstanding natural features and landscapes of the Taranaki region from inappropriate subdivision, use and development, and to appropriately manage other natural areas, features and landscapes of value to the region.***

## POLICIES

### Nationally and regionally outstanding natural features and landscapes

#### NFL POLICY 1

Outstanding natural features and landscapes are to be protected from inappropriate subdivision, use and development, including protection of:

- (a) the special scenic, recreational, scientific and Māori cultural and spiritual values associated with Mount Taranaki;
- (b) the volcanic landforms and features of regional significance on the Taranaki ring plain;
- (c) the special scenic, recreational and scientific values associated with the coastal environment and coastal features of regional significance;
- (d) the natural character and natural features and landscapes of regional significance associated with Taranaki's rivers and lakes and their margins;
- (e) the rural features and landscapes of regional significance, including the scenic and landscape qualities of the raised marine terraces of south Taranaki and inland Taranaki hill country; and
- (f) landscape features associated with areas of indigenous vegetation that are of regional significance.

#### Other natural areas, features or landscapes of value

#### NFL POLICY 2

Recognition shall be given to the appropriate management of other natural areas, features or landscapes not covered by Policy 1 above, but still of value to the region for one or more of the following reasons:

- (a) the maintenance of water quality and quantity;
- (b) soil conservation;
- (c) the avoidance or mitigation of natural hazards;
- (d) natural character amenity and heritage values and scientific and educational significance;
- (e) geological and geomorphological, botanical, wildlife and fishery values;
- (f) biodiversity and the functioning of ecosystems;
- (g) 'sinks' or 'pools' for greenhouse gases; and
- (h) cultural features of significance to tangata whenua.

#### Appropriate subdivision, use and development

#### NFL POLICY 3

The protection of outstanding and where appropriate, other natural features and landscapes of value shall be achieved by having regard to the following criteria in determining appropriate subdivision, use and development:

- (a) the value, importance or significance of the natural feature or landscape at the local, regional or national level;
- (b) the degree and significance of actual or potential adverse effects on outstanding natural features and landscapes or other important natural

features and landscapes, including cumulative effects, and the efficacy of measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate such effects;

- (c) the benefits to be derived from the use and development at the local, regional and national level;
- (d) the extent to which the subdivision, use or development recognises or provides for the relationship of tangata whenua and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga;
- (e) the need for use or development to occur in the particular location;
- (f) the sensitivity or vulnerability of a natural feature or landscape to change, and its capacity to accommodate change, without compromising the values of the feature or landscape;
- (g) the degree of existing modification of the natural feature or landscape from its natural character;
- (h) the degree to which financial contributions associated with any subdivision, use and development can be used to offset actual or potential adverse effects arising from those activities.

#### Explanation of the policies

Policies 1 and 2 give effect to the requirements of the Resource Management Act. In particular, they address matters of national importance under the Act – namely, the protection of outstanding natural features and landscapes (section 6(b) of the Act), the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga (section 6(e) of the Act) and, in part, the protection of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna (section 6(c) of the Act).

Policy 1 identifies some of the areas that contain natural features and landscapes that are considered to be 'outstanding' and of national or regional significance. Provision for their protection through the methods listed below will be made.

Policy 2 recognises that other natural areas, features or landscapes are of value to the region. These include wetlands and areas of vegetation important to introduced species, such as introduced game birds and trout. Consideration is to be given to these areas and values in managing the use, development and protection of resources. Policy 2 gives effect to applicable aspects of both Sections 6 and 7 of the Act including under Section 7 the efficient use and development of natural and physical resources (Section 7 (b)), the maintenance and enhancement of amenity values (Section 7(c)), the intrinsic values of ecosystems (Section 7 (d)), the maintenance and enhancement of the quality of the environment (Section 7 (f)) and any finite characteristics of natural and physical resources (Section 7(g)).

Policy 3 lists those matters to be considered in determining appropriate subdivision, use and development in outstanding or important natural features and landscapes. These include the value or importance of the natural feature or landscape, their vulnerability to change and the overall degree of adverse effect. The benefits to be derived from the use or development at a local, regional and national level must also be considered. These and other matters listed in Policy 3 will need to be considered in determining whether on balance the use is appropriate and will meet the sustainable management purpose of the Act.

#### Related policies

All policies in **Sections 6.1** [Surface water allocation]; **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; **Section 6.4** [Wetlands]; **Section 6.5** [Land drainage and associated diversions]; **Section 6.6** [Use of river and lake beds]; **Section 6.7** [Public access to and along rivers and lakes]; **Section 7.1** [Air quality]; **Section 8.1** [Natural character of the coastal environment]; **Section 8.2** [Coastal water quality]; **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; **Section 15** [Built environment]; and **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

**NFL METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation promoting the protection of outstanding natural features and landscapes in the coastal marine area, and associated with wetlands, rivers, lakes and their margins.

**NFL METH 2** Have **particular regard to** the values of **other natural areas, features or landscapes of value** but not considered to be outstanding, when managing the use, development and protection of resources.

**NFL METH 3** Apply **regional rules** in the coastal marine area and in relation to soil conservation, air quality and freshwater to regulate, mitigate or prohibit resource use and development activities that have potential or adverse environment effects on outstanding natural features and landscapes.

**NFL METH 4** Promote the maintenance and enhancement of amenity values as a trustee of the **Taranaki Tree Trust**

**NFL METH 5** **Recognise** the ecological, intrinsic, amenity and conservation values afforded by indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna when carrying out the Council's responsibilities under the Biosecurity Act 1993, Soil Conservation and River Control Act, and other legislation.

**NFL METH 6** **Advocate** to relevant agencies, the use of **other legislation** (such as the Conservation Act 1987, the National Parks Act 1980, the Reserves Act 1977, the Queen Elizabeth II National Trust Act 1977, the Fisheries Act 1983 and the Biosecurity Act 1993) or mechanisms (such as the Forest Heritage Trust Fund, Biodiversity Fund and Sustainable Management Fund) to protect or restore areas of outstanding natural features and landscapes including significant indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna.

**NFL METH 7** Provide **advice and information including guidelines** to landowners, resource users and the public to:

- (a) generally promote awareness of the benefits of protecting and restoring areas of indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna, including wetlands; and
- (b) encourage the voluntary protection or restoration of areas of indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna, including wetlands.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following methods:

**NFL METH 8** Include in **district plans** and on **resource consents**, provisions or conditions promoting the protection of outstanding natural features and landscapes.

**NFL METH 9** Have **particular regard to** the values of **other natural areas, features or landscapes of value** but not considered to be outstanding, when managing the use, development and protection of resources.

**NFL METH 10** **Identify** through public consultation and other processes, the region's outstanding or important natural and cultural features and landscapes.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

Territorial authorities have a particularly important role in the protection of outstanding natural features and landscapes within district plans given that most

matters of this nature refer to site-specific land use consents and effects which are of direct concern.

The objective, policies and methods establish a policy framework for outstanding and important natural features and landscapes in the Taranaki region. Their aim is to promote the protection of outstanding natural features and landscapes from inappropriate subdivision, use and development, and to protect or restore other areas, features or landscapes of importance.

Through the implementation of the policies and methods, the Taranaki Regional Council can manage adverse effects on outstanding and important natural features and landscapes. The policies and methods build on current approaches. They have proven to be successful to date in terms of achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### **Environmental results anticipated**

##### **NFL ER 1**

*Appropriate protection and enhancement of outstanding natural features and landscapes and other natural areas, features or landscapes of value.*

##### **NFL ER 2**

*Appropriate subdivision, use and development are able to occur in accordance with the criteria in Policy 3.*

## **10.2 PROTECTING OUR HISTORIC HERITAGE**

### **Background to the issue**

Taranaki has a wide range and number of unique and special historic heritage places, areas and landscapes. They include archaeological sites, sites of significance to iwi and hapu, heritage buildings, memorials and precincts. Archaeological sites (places in New Zealand associated with human activity that occurred before 1900) are primarily clustered along the Taranaki coastline and main inland river systems. These sites have some protection under the Historic Places Act. There are also many other important historic heritage places, buildings, or features that date from 1900.

What happens to Taranaki's historic heritage is important because these resources make Taranaki unique. Taranaki has many buildings, features or places of cultural, architectural, historic, scientific and ecological or other interest. These include sites, places, place names, areas, wāhi tapu, taonga, structures and natural features and landscapes of cultural and historic significance. Some are protected in historical reserves but many are on private land. A number of buildings and monuments survive from the

earliest decades of European settlement in Taranaki and are also important for their architectural or historic significance. There are many notable trees of importance.

There is a need to update information for recorded sites and to identify areas where there is a high probability of unrecorded archaeological sites. Many archaeological sites, areas and landscapes have not been surveyed. Other sites, particularly Māori sites of interest (eg, taonga or wāhi tapu sites) have not been clearly identified.

Many heritage sites and landscapes are at risk from inappropriate subdivision, use and development activities that, in certain circumstances, may include farm related activities, subdivision, earthworks, hydrocarbon exploration and development, coastal and urban development, including inappropriate alterations, demolition and relocation. Many archaeological sites and heritage buildings are also in a state of decline due to non-development or resource use. Many others are at risk from fires, earthquakes, coastal erosion or other natural processes.

### **The significant issues in relation to protecting Taranaki's historic heritage are:**

**HIS  
ISS 1**      **Identifying and raising awareness of Taranaki's historic heritage to promote its protection.**

**HIS  
ISS 2**      **Managing the adverse effects of inappropriate subdivision, use and development activities on Taranaki's historic heritage.**

**HIS  
ISS 3**      **Promoting the active management of the region's historical heritage.**

## **OBJECTIVE**

### **HIS OBJECTIVE 1**

***To protect the historic heritage values in the Taranaki region from inappropriate subdivision, use and development, and where practical enhance those values.***

## **POLICIES**

### **The identification of historic heritage**

#### **HIS POLICY 1**

*The historic heritage of the region will be identified and appropriate records kept of historic heritage including:*

- (a) archaeological sites;*
- (b) sites, structures, places, areas or landscapes of historical, architectural, cultural, scientific or technological interest or significance; and*

- (c) *sites or landscapes of significance to tangata whenua for spiritual, cultural or historical reasons.*

#### Adverse effects on historic heritage

##### **HIS POLICY 2**

*Historic heritage will be protected from inappropriate subdivision, use and development, and the maintenance, conservation and restoration of historic heritage sites, places and values will be encouraged as far as possible.*

#### Explanation of the policies

Policies 1 and 2 recognise that there is a need to identify, protect and enhance the heritage values of the region. The policies give effect to matters of national importance under the Resource Management Act – namely, the protection of historic heritage from inappropriate subdivision, use and development (section 6(f) of the Act).

Taranaki has a wide range and number of historic heritage places, areas and sites. Taranaki has a rich archaeological history. Archaeological sites have some protection under the Historic Places Act 1993 but may continue to be modified or destroyed by natural processes and human changes in land use. Such modification or destruction can be authorised under the Historic Places Act. Policy 1 recognises that there is a need for up-to-date information on historic heritage places and sites to identify their values and promote their protection from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.

Policy 2 states that historic heritage will be protected from inappropriate subdivision, use and development. What is inappropriate subdivision, use and development will depend on the site, the values to be protected, and the nature and extent of the impacts of development on historic heritage. Important considerations will include such things as the degree of importance of the site or place as part of the history of Taranaki and New Zealand, the quality and extent of physical reminders of past occupation, any architectural values that are rare, unique or representative of Taranaki, particular aspects of cultural, educational or social importance that reflect the values of the Taranaki communities, evidence of a high degree of technical accomplishment or scientific value relating to the development of Taranaki; or aspects of particular significance to tangata whenua.

#### Related policies

All policies in **Sections 5.1** [Soil erosion]; **Section 6.1** [Surface water allocation]; **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; **Section 6.5** [Wetlands]; **Section 6.6** [Land drainage and associated diversions]; **Section 6.7** [Use of river and lake beds]; **Section 7.1** [Air quality]; **Section 8.1** [Natural character of the coastal

environment]; **Section 8.2** [Coastal water quality]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; all the policies in **Section 10.1** [Natural features and landscapes]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; **Section 15** [Built environment]; and **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

**HIS METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation promoting the protection of historic heritage in the coastal marine area and historic heritage associated with wetlands, rivers, lakes and their margins.

**HIS METH 2** Apply **regional rules** in the coastal marine area and in relation to fresh water to regulate, mitigate or prohibit resource use and development activities that have potential or adverse environment effects on historic heritage.

**HIS METH 3** **Advocate to:**  
(a) the New Zealand Historic Places Trust, the New Zealand Archaeological Association, the Department of Conservation, the three territorial authorities and iwi to maintain and regularly update databases and records of historic heritage; and  
(b) relevant agencies the use of **other legislation** (such as the Conservation Act 1987, the National Parks Act 1980, the Reserves Act 1977, the Queen Elizabeth II National Trust Act 1977 and the Historic Places Act 1993), for the purpose of identifying and protecting the region's historic heritage values.

**HIS METH 4** **Actively support, as and when appropriate, surveys, research and investigations** into identifying historic heritage in the region.

**HIS METH 5** Provide **advice and information** to landowners, resource users and the public on the need for and value of heritage protection.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following methods:

**HIS METH 6** Include in **district plans** and on **resource consents**, provisions or conditions promoting the identification, protection and enhancement of historic heritage.

- HIS METH 7** **Support**, as and when appropriate, **surveys, research and investigations** identifying historic heritage and landscapes of significant historic and cultural importance.
- HIS METH 8** **Advocate**, as and where appropriate, for the establishment of **heritage protection authorities**.
- HIS METH 9** Provide **financial and other incentives** for the purpose of the maintenance, conservation or enhancement of historic heritage, including **rate relief** on land mandatorily or voluntarily protected for the purpose of maintaining or enhancing landscape or heritage values.
- HIS METH 10** Provide **technical advice and support** to owners of historic sites, places or buildings on ways to protect, maintain, conserve or enhance heritage values.
- HIS METH 11** Maintain and regularly update **databases and records** of historic heritage.
- HIS METH 12** **Encourage** the development of interpretation and heritage trails that promote historic heritage places.
- HIS METH 13** Generally **promote awareness** within the Taranaki community of the heritage values of the region and promote all practicable means for their protection and preservation, including public education regarding the archaeological authority process under Sections 11 and 12 of the Historic Places Act 1993 regarding applications to destroy, damage or modify an archaeological site.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods establish a policy framework for the protection of historic heritage in the Taranaki region. Their aim is to promote the protection of outstanding natural features and landscapes.

Heritage protection is largely the responsibility of the three territorial authorities, the New Zealand Historic Places Trust and the Department of Conservation. However, the Taranaki Regional Council also has resource management responsibilities under the Resource Management Act for historic structures, shipwrecks and other heritage sites in the coastal marine area.

Through the implementation of the policies and methods, the Taranaki Regional Council and territorial

authorities can manage adverse effects on historic heritage. The policies and methods build on current approaches. They have proven to be successful to date in terms of achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### **HIS ER 1**

*Protection and enhancement of historic heritage values.*

### 10.3 MAINTAINING AND ENHANCING AMENITY VALUES

#### Background to the issue

Amenity values are those natural or physical qualities or characteristics of an area that contribute to people's appreciation of its pleasantness, aesthetic coherence, and cultural and recreational attribute.

Taranaki residents place high value on such aspects as a clean and quiet urban and rural environment, the scenic, aesthetic and recreational opportunities provided by parks, reserves and walkways, a pleasant environment free of nuisance arising from excessive noise, odours and other elements, and attractive development of the built environment.

Taranaki's rural environment contains many valued amenity values. However, Taranaki's rural areas are also working environments and places of production where rural activities such as farming forestry and pig and poultry farming predominate. As a result there may be effects on amenity values that arise from farming and other rural operations, for example, noise or odours from farm animals, vehicles and machinery. In many cases these are to be expected as part of normal and accepted farming practices characteristic of rural areas.

It is recognised that through appropriate subdivision, use and development there are opportunities to provide facilities or features in the rural and urban environment for the enjoyment of people that may increase amenity values.

Most issues relating to adverse effects on local or regional amenity values arising from use and development activities (e.g. stormwater runoff, emissions to air, noise, discharges to land and water) are largely addressed in other sections of the Regional Policy Statement. However, other impacts, such as those on traffic or relating to site layout and building design, still apply.



The significant issues in relation to maintaining and enhancing amenity values are:

- AMY  
ISS 1**      **Recognising the positive effects of use and development activities in relation to their maintenance and enhancement of amenity values.**
- AMY  
ISS 2**      **Avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects that may arise from use and development activities on amenity values.**

## OBJECTIVE

### AMY OBJECTIVE 1

*To recognise the positive contributions of appropriate use and development in terms of providing for the maintenance and enhancement of amenity values in the Taranaki region, while avoiding, remedying or mitigating the adverse effects of inappropriate use and development on amenity values.*

## POLICY

### Amenity values

#### AMY POLICY 1

*The adverse effects of resource use and development on rural and urban amenity values will be avoided, remedied or mitigated and any positive effects on amenity values promoted. Any positive effects of appropriate use and development will be fully considered and balanced against adverse effects.*

*Those qualities and characteristics that contribute to amenity values in the Taranaki region include:*

- (a) safe and pleasant living environment free of nuisance arising from excessive noise, odours and contaminants, and from traffic and other risks to public health and safety;*
- (b) scenic, aesthetic, recreational and educational opportunities provided by parks, reserves, farmland, and other open spaces, rivers, lakes, wetlands and their margins, coastal areas and areas of vegetation;*
- (c) a visually pleasing and stimulating environment;*
- (d) efficient, convenient and attractive urban forms; and*
- (e) aesthetically pleasing building design, including appropriate landscaping and signs.*

### Explanation of the policy

Policy 1 states that the adverse effects of resource use and development on amenity values in the rural and urban development will be avoided, remedied or mitigated, and that any positive effects on amenity values will be promoted. Qualities and attributes that

contribute to Taranaki's high amenity values are also identified.

While Taranaki's rural environments contain many highly valued amenity values, they are also places of production where there may be effects on amenity values. In many cases these will be the result of normal farming operations that can be expected in rural areas. Some urban or residential activities when locating in rural areas therefore have the potential to curtail established, legitimate rural and industrial activities through reverse sensitivity effects on amenity values. These issues need to be considered in implementing Policy 1.

Appropriate use and development may contribute positive effects on amenity values and also contribute to wider positive effects on the community (such as economic benefits) and these are to be fully considered and balanced under Policy 1.

### Related policies

All policies in **Sections 5.1** [Soil erosion]; **Section 5.2** [Soil health]; **Section 5.3** [Hazardous substances and contaminated sites]; **Section 6.1** [Surface water allocation]; **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; **Section 6.4** [Wetlands]; **Section 6.5** [Land drainage and associated diversions]; **Section 6.6** [Use of river and lake beds]; **Section 6.7** [Public access to rivers and lakes]; **Section 7.1** [Air quality]; **Section 8.1** [Natural character of the coastal environment]; **Section 8.2** [Coastal water quality]; **Section 8.3** [Public access to the coastal environment]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; all the policies in **Section 10.1** [Natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.2** [Historic heritage]; **Section 12** [Energy]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; **Section 15** [Built environment]; and **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- AMY  
METH 1**      Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation that recognise and provide for the maintenance and enhancement of amenity values in the coastal marine area and associated with air, land and water resources.
- AMY  
METH 2**      Apply **regional rules** in the coastal marine area and in relation to air and fresh water to allow, regulate or prohibit resource use and development activities that have potential or adverse environment effects on amenity values.
- AMY**              Promote the maintenance and

- METH 3** enhancement of amenity values as a trustee of the **Taranaki Tree Trust**.
- AMY METH 4** **Recognise** the ecological, intrinsic, amenity and conservation values afforded by indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna when carrying out the Council's responsibilities under the Biosecurity Act 1993, Soil Conservation and River Control Act and other legislation.
- AMY METH 5** Provide **advice and information including guidelines** to landowners, resource users and the public to:
- (a) generally promote awareness of the benefits of protecting and restoring areas of indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna; and
  - (b) encourage the voluntary protection or restoration of areas of indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna.
- AMY METH 6** **Support** the maintenance and enhancement of regionally significant gardens and, in conjunction with the territorial authorities of the region, consider supporting other regionally significant recreational, cultural and heritage amenities.
- AMY METH 7** Prepare and implement, in conjunction with the region's three territorial authorities, a **regional walkways and cycleways strategy** to enhance scenic, aesthetic and recreational opportunities.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following methods:

- AMY METH 8** Include in **district plans** and on **resource consents**, provisions or conditions promoting the maintenance and enhancement of rural and urban amenity values.
- AMY METH 9** **Encourage** the use of corridors for public network utilities where feasible so as to contain the geographic effects on amenity values of such utilities to a defined and limited area.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods establish a policy framework for the maintenance and enhancement of amenity values in the Taranaki region.

Maintaining and enhancing amenity values are largely the responsibility of the three territorial authorities through their land use responsibilities. However, the Taranaki Regional Council also has resource management responsibilities under the Resource Management Act for amenity values.

Through the implementation of the policies and methods adverse effects on amenity values are managed and action taken to enhance those values. Balancing the positive effects of appropriate use and development and promoting such effects will assist in achieving the sustainable management purpose of the Act.

The policies and methods build on current approaches. They have proven to be successful to date in terms of achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### **AMY ER 1**

*Protection and enhancement of amenities on the Taranaki region.*

# 11. Natural hazards

## 11.1 REDUCING THE RISKS TO THE COMMUNITY FROM NATURAL HAZARDS

### Background to the issue

A 'natural hazard', as defined under the Resource Management Act, is: "...any atmospheric or earth or water related occurrence (including earthquake, tsunami, erosion, volcanic and geothermal activity, landslip, subsidence, sedimentation, wind, drought, fire or flooding) the action of which adversely affects or may adversely affect human life, property or other aspects of the environment".

Natural hazards arise from natural events such as high rainfall, earthquake, volcanic activity and high winds. However, natural events only become hazards when they have the potential to affect people, property and other valued aspects of the environment.

In terms of the coastal environment, Oakura, the New Plymouth urban area, Bell Block, Waitara River mouth, Onaero and Urenui Beach are areas of greatest coastal erosion risk because of the proximity of these urban areas to eroding coastlines. Other natural hazard risks in the coastal environment are associated with flooding or erosion of riverbanks in estuaries, or along the erosion-prone papa cliffs of south and north Taranaki, particularly where urban or residential areas or network utilities are nearby.

There are potentially high economic and social costs associated with natural hazards in Taranaki with significant consequences for public health and safety, agriculture, housing and infrastructure. Natural hazards may also adversely affect environmental values. One of the consequences of climate change is that Taranaki is expected to have more severe and more frequent extreme weather events.

Inappropriate development or behaviour, or lack of awareness can increase the exposure of people and communities to risks from natural hazards. For example, some human activities can exacerbate the potential for a natural hazard to occur e.g. forestry clearance leading to increased run-off and flooding potential, or building in flood-prone areas. Therefore, increasing public awareness of hazards can be an effective way of reducing this risk and avoiding often costly reactive hazard protection, construction or engineering works. Good planning to avoid or mitigate the effects of natural hazards is also important.

Depending upon the nature of the natural hazard, the level of risk, and the advantages and cost of any action, there may be benefits in undertaking actions or activities to avoid or mitigate the effects of natural

hazards on people, property and communities. However, inevitably there will be events where, despite a community's readiness and efforts to mitigate the effects of such events, coordinated relief actions and responses are necessary to assist individuals and communities affected.

**The significant issues relating to reducing the risks to the community from natural hazards are:**

- HAZ  
ISS 1**      **Increasing public awareness of and planning for natural hazards.**
- HAZ  
ISS 2**      **Modifying natural hazard processes and taking into account potential changes in the frequency and intensity of natural hazards in the future.**
- HAZ  
ISS 3**      **Reducing the costs of natural hazard events, emergencies or disasters.**

### OBJECTIVE

#### HAZ OBJECTIVE 1

*To avoid or mitigate natural hazards within the Taranaki region by minimising the net costs or risks of natural hazards to people, property and the environment of the region.*

### POLICIES

#### Community awareness and planning

##### HAZ POLICY 1

*Reduce the susceptibility of the Taranaki community and environment to natural hazards by improving community awareness, responsibility and planning for the avoidance and mitigation of natural hazards.*

#### Hazard protection works

##### HAZ POLICY 2

*New subdivision, use and development should be so located and designed that the need for hazard protection works is avoided.*

#### Role of natural features

##### HAZ POLICY 3

*The role of natural features to avoid or mitigate natural hazards should be recognised and maintained.*

#### Modifying natural hazard processes and events

##### HAZ POLICY 4

*The appropriateness of works and activities designed to modify natural hazard processes and events will be assessed by reference to:*

- (a) *the levels of risk and any likely increase in disaster or risk potential;*
- (b) *the costs and benefits to people and the community;*

- (c) *the potential adverse effects of the works on the environment; and*
- (d) *the effectiveness of the works or activities and the practicality of alternative means, including the relocation of existing development or infrastructure away from areas of natural hazard risk.*

### Reducing the cost of natural hazard events

#### **HAZ POLICY 5**

*The cost to the community resulting from the occurrence of emergencies and natural disasters will be reduced through the application of emergency, relief and recovery programmes, which reduce the risk, and costs of emergencies or disasters.*

### Emergency services and infrastructure

#### **HAZ POLICY 6**

*To recognise the importance of air, land and sea transportation and associated navigation systems and infrastructure as essential services that should have priority in a state of emergency.*

### Explanation of the policies

Awareness of hazard risks and the adoption of appropriate building controls, including avoiding inappropriate development in hazard prone areas, will reduce the susceptibility of the Taranaki community and valued aspects of the environment to natural hazards (Policy 1). In implementing Policy 1, the net costs and benefits to the community must be weighed up.

Policy 2 recognises that through appropriate planning, the need for protection works can be avoided by siting new subdivision, use and development away from existing or potential natural hazards.

Policy 3 provides that local government, when carrying out their statutory functions, should recognise the importance of natural features such as beaches, sand-dunes, wetlands, riparian planting and vegetative cover to modify the causes or processes leading to natural hazard events, including their frequency or magnitude. For example, the retention or planting of vegetative cover in upper catchments and the protection of wetlands may reduce flood risks, river bank erosion and channel instability.

There will be situations (Policy 4) where modifying natural hazards will produce benefits to the community in excess of the costs involved in protection or prevention works or programmes. Where such works or activities are considered necessary, they should not result in the transfer of costs or risks from one party to others or to the environment without the agreement of the other party and some mechanism to record that agreement for the benefit of subsequent landowners. Consideration should be given to the relocation of existing development and infrastructure away from

areas prone to natural hazards, particularly where the environmental costs resulting from protection works exceed the benefits, which would result. In general terms, risk takers should themselves carry that risk. Similarly, those who benefit from the works or services should pay for them.

In the event of a natural hazard event, a coordinated response from the community is appropriate to relieve the burden of loss for individuals and the community affected (Policy 5). The *Civil Defence Emergency Management Plan for Taranaki* addresses planning and preparation to reduce, respond and recover from adverse natural events. Central government involvement is guided by the *Recovery Plan for Natural Disasters and Emergencies*. Assistance from central government may be provided when the event is beyond the capability of the region to cope.

Policy 6 recognises that air, land and sea transportation and associated navigation systems and infrastructure will play a vital role in reducing the cost of natural hazard events and should therefore have priority in a state of emergency.

### Related policies

All policies in **Section 5.1** [Soil erosion]; **Section 5.3** [Hazardous substances and contaminated sites]; **Section 6.4** [Wetlands]; **Section 6.5** [Land drainage and associated diversions]; Policy 3 in **Section 6.6** [Use of river and lake beds]; Policy 1 in **Section 7.2** [Climate change]; and Policy 2 in **Section 8.1** [Natural character of the coast]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity] and all policies in **Section 13** [Minerals].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- HAZ METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation addressing natural hazards in the coastal marine area, coastal erosion, river bank and river bed erosion and flooding, and soil erosion.
- HAZ METH 2** Apply **regional rules** to regulate, mitigate or prohibit coastal hazard protection works, discharges to land and water, the building of structures or carrying out of works in river beds and land drainage activities, to avoid or minimise natural hazards.
- HAZ METH 3** Maintain and implement the **Civil Defence Emergency Management Group Plan for Taranaki** setting out emergency management provisions for the region including risk reduction and readiness, response and recovery provisions in the event of a natural hazard event as part of

the Civil Defence Emergency Management Group.

**HAZ METH 4** Maintain:  
(a) detailed regional **flood response strategies** in priority catchments, including the Waitara and Waitotara catchments, and examine strategies for the implementation of a range of adjustment measures including catchment monitoring and modelling of hydrologic responses to extreme rainfall events; information provision; and river training and flood protection works;  
(b) a **regional volcanic strategy** that sets out principles for response, an analysis of potential risk, monitoring systems and mechanisms for integrating the emergency plans of other agencies in relation to volcanic hazards; and  
(c) the **Taranaki Regional Volcanic Contingency Plan**, which provides for a coordinated response to a volcanic eruption on Mount Taranaki.

**HAZ METH 5** Maintain **river control and flood protection works** in the Lower Waitara River and the Waiwhakaiho River and undertake other emergency river and flood control works when necessary under the Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941 and the Land Drainage Act 1908.

**HAZ METH 6** Develop and maintain **hazard information** including coastal hazards in partnership with territorial authorities.

**HAZ METH 7** Maintain a **civil defence and emergency management response capability** under the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002, which includes the ability to assist in the **establishment and coordination** of disaster relief and recovery assistance programmes.

**HAZ METH 8** Establish or support appropriate **contingency funds** to assist in disaster relief and recovery and apply such funds in a manner that reduces susceptibility to future natural hazards.

**HAZ METH 9** Provide **support**, in conjunction with the three territorial authorities, to the Taranaki Civil Defence Emergency Management Group.

**HAZ METH 10** Maintain and where appropriate, extend river level and flow, rainfall and wind, and volcanic seismic monitoring systems to

**monitor** risks associated with natural hazards.

**HAZ METH 11** Provide **advice and information** to landowners, resource users and the public on:  
(a) natural events and processes, natural hazards;  
(b) drainage and river and flood control measures; and  
(c) ways in which individuals and communities can prepare or make adjustments to reduce their susceptibility to natural hazard events.

**HAZ METH 12** **Advocate, provide advice and consider providing financial incentives** to:  
(a) land owners and other resource users, for the implementation of appropriate programmes to modify the causes of natural hazards or minimise the risks and effects of natural hazards such as the afforestation of upper catchments, creation of wetlands and other land management practices to reduce erosion and flood hazards;  
(b) relevant industries, the preparation of codes of practice or industry guidelines designed to promote measures to avoid or reduce the potential for loss or damage from natural hazards. These codes of practice could be prepared by the insurance, banking, construction, forestry, farming, and mining industries and other land users;  
(c) other agencies, groups or individuals the preparation of natural hazard avoidance, mitigation or contingency plans, strategies or agreements, where appropriate; and  
(d) central government the maintenance and implementation of appropriate relief and recovery programmes for natural disasters and emergencies.

**HAZ METH 13** Participate in the development, implementation and review of a **national civil defence plan** under the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002.

**HAZ METH 14** **Support** central government in the development, implementation and review of the **National Civil Defence Emergency Management Strategy** under the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002.

### Management responsibilities – control of the use of land to avoid or mitigate natural hazards

In accordance with section 62(1)(i)(i) of the Resource Management Act, the three **territorial authorities** of the region will be responsible for specifying the objectives, policies and methods for the control of the use of land to avoid or mitigate natural hazards except where the control of the use of land relates to the Taranaki Regional Council's functions under the Act regarding:

- the coastal marine area; and
- the beds of rivers, lakes and other waterbodies.

**Territorial authorities** will consider the following method:

- HAZ METH 15** Include provisions in **district plans** that address natural hazard issues including the control of the use of land to avoid or mitigate natural hazards. Particular methods may include:
- (a) special hazard zones and rules;
  - (b) identification of natural hazards on maps and registers;
  - (c) general building and development controls or criteria;
  - (d) subdivision controls; and
  - (e) designations or other provision for public works.

**Territorial authorities** may also wish to consider the following methods:

- HAZ METH 16** Take into account the location, nature, and potential extent of natural hazards when providing and planning for the provision of essential lifeline utilities within each district.

- HAZ METH 17** Process, administer and monitor **resource consents** under the Resource Management Act in a manner which enables natural hazards to be explicitly addressed, and in particular, consider the need for conditions on resource consents, including among others:
- (a) minimum separation distances, minimum floor levels, requirements for relocatable building and other land use restrictions;
  - (b) esplanade reserves on subdivision; and
  - (c) requirements for the execution of **bonds and financial contributions**.

- HAZ METH 18** Maintain and implement the **Civil Defence Emergency Management Group Plan for Taranaki** setting out regional emergency response and contingency provisions in the event of a natural hazard event as part of

the Civil Defence Emergency Management Group;

- HAZ METH 19** Provide, as appropriate, **works and services** within the district to modify the causes or effects or both, of natural hazards.

- HAZ METH 20** Include in **building consents** under the Building Act 2004, conditions relating to **structural requirements** for flood, wind, fire, earthquake and volcanic hazards.

- HAZ METH 21** Maintain a **civil defence emergency management response capability**, which includes the ability to assist in the establishment and coordination of disaster relief and recovery assistance programmes.

### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for the management of natural hazards and, in particular, avoid or mitigate the adverse effects of natural hazards on human life, property and the environment.

While some regional rules apply as a backstop to controlling significant adverse effects associated with natural hazards under the Resource Management Act, most of the methods relate to the provision of services under the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act and, to a lesser extent, the Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941 and the Land Drainage Act 1908.

These methods focus on the Taranaki Regional Council working with territorial authorities (who are the regulatory and consent granting authority responsible for controlling the use of land for the avoidance or mitigation of natural hazards) to implement a region-wide approach to the management of natural hazards

Civil defence planning and preparedness under the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act provide further means of reducing the potential for loss or damage from natural hazard emergencies and disasters.

The policies and methods build on current approaches to this issue. They have proven to be acceptable to date in terms of promoting effective integrated management and achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

**Environmental results anticipated****HAZ ER 1**

*Reduction in actual and potential hazard losses to people, property and the environment.*

**HAZ ER 2**

*Use and development of resources consistent with levels of risk.*

**HAZ ER 3**

*Increased community awareness of, and responsibility for, hazard avoidance and mitigation.*

**HAZ ER 4**

*Increased certainty to resource users.*





## 12. Waste management

### 12.1 MINIMISING WASTE AND MANAGING ITS DISPOSAL

#### Background to the issue

Waste occurs in solid, semi solid, liquid and gaseous forms. For most people, the term 'waste' describes materials or substances that are no longer needed or useable, or have lost their economic value and therefore require disposal. However, waste can be much more than useless items, which then have to be discarded. Some waste represents a resource that, with careful management (e.g. recycling), may have economic value and can contribute to the sustainable management of our environment. Increasingly, it now represents a wasted resource.

There is a need to minimise the amount of waste generated and thereby minimise the economic, energy, social, and environmental costs associated with the wasteful consumption of resources, which can deplete critical and non-renewable resources. Waste minimisation can offer direct and immediate economic and environmental benefits. While the recovery of waste is a fundamental component of waste management, its limitations (e.g. variable quality, high collection and transportation costs, uncertain markets, and poor economic returns) mean that waste minimisation may offer the greater scope for positive environmental outcomes.

There is also a need to ensure that large volumes of waste can be safely disposed of. The availability of disposal facilities and services such as kerbside collections, transfer stations, landfills and cleanfills are an essential part of waste management. Historically rubbish dumps have been associated with a number of adverse environmental effects in the region such as the discharge of leachate to groundwater or the production of methane gases. However, over the last decade, adverse effects associated with landfills in the region have declined as the design, control, management and monitoring of landfills have been improved. Today, landfills are generally well managed with little or no adverse environmental effect. All new landfills are engineered to very high standards (e.g. landfill liners and leachate collection systems).

Increasingly, central and local governments are looking at opportunities to promote waste minimisation, reuse, recycling, and recovery. If less waste is produced, it implies that the materials and items currently consumed are being used more efficiently. Similarly, using waste as a resource by reusing, recycling and recovering energy means that other resources are subject to less pressure.

The significant issues in relation to waste management in the Taranaki region are:

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| <b>WST<br/>ISS 1</b> | <b>Minimising the volumes of waste generated and requiring disposal.</b>   |
| <b>WST<br/>ISS 2</b> | <b>Providing for the efficient and effective disposal of waste while avoiding, remedying or mitigating any adverse environmental effects associated with waste disposal.</b> |

#### OBJECTIVE

##### **WST OBJECTIVE 1**

***To minimise the quantity of waste being produced and disposed of within the Taranaki region and to ensure that the disposal of wastes avoids or mitigates adverse effects on the environment.***

#### POLICY

##### **Waste minimisation and disposal**

##### **WST POLICY 1**

*Encourage waste minimisation practices and practices to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse environmental effects of final disposal by promoting, in the following order of priority:*

- lower levels of waste generation;*
- higher levels of reuse, recycling and recovery of waste; and*
- efficient and effective treatment and disposal of residual waste in an environmentally sustainable manner.*

##### **Explanation of the policy**

Policy 1 is consistent with the waste management hierarchy adopted by the Government and in other parts of the world, including the Council's *Regional Waste Management Strategy for Taranaki*. The Policy places a priority on minimising waste but also acknowledges that practical and effective means of dealing with waste in specific circumstance may include the reuse, recycling and recovery of wastes and the effective and efficient disposal of any residual waste. If this hierarchy is adopted by resource users it will not only reduce or avoid adverse environmental effects associated with final waste disposal (creating significant savings to the community), it will also achieve a more efficient use of natural resources. It also reflects that every sector within the community at large has a part to play and can make a positive contribution to waste management.

Of note is that policies relating to adverse effects on the environment arising from the disposal of waste are addressed in other sections of the Regional Policy

Statement (e.g. management of hazardous substances, surface water and groundwater quality, and air quality).

#### Related policies

All policies in **Section 5.2** [Soil health] and **Section 5.3** [Hazardous substances and contaminated sites]; Policy 3 of **Section 6.2** [Water quality]; all policies in **Section 7.1** [Air quality]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; all policies in **Section 10.1** [Natural features and landscapes] and **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; Policy 1 in **Section 14** [Energy]; and all policies in **Section 15.2** [Infrastructure and network utilities].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- WST METH 1** As appropriate, consider and apply programmes set out in the *New Zealand Waste Strategy*.
- WST METH 2** Continue to **participate** in regional waste forums, at strategic and operational levels, to develop, implement and review initiatives for waste management in Taranaki.
- WST METH 3** Maintain, implement and review, in conjunction with the region's territorial authorities, the *Regional Waste Strategy for Taranaki*.
- WST METH 4** Include in the *Regional Waste Strategy for Taranaki*, actions and targets for waste minimisation, the management of different waste streams, and for waste disposal.
- WST METH 5** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies, rules and other methods of implementation addressing adverse environmental effects associated with waste management.
- WST METH 6** As appropriate consider including a condition or conditions addressing waste minimisation and waste management programmes in new or renewed **resource consents** for industrial and trade activities.
- WST METH 7** Encourage all applications for **resource consents** to operate landfills and cleanfills to demonstrate commitment to the waste management hierarchy of waste minimisation, reuse, recycling and recovery prior to disposal, as far as appropriate, and take into account any such actions when making decisions on any such application.

- WST METH 8** **Advocate** and **promote** waste avoidance by:
- (a) providing technical advice on recycling, the use of recycled materials, and the development and use of waste recovery processes and technology to industry, consumers, agriculture and other sectors;
  - (b) assisting in waste audits and waste reduction plans; and
  - (c) in conjunction with appropriate organisations, preparing and distributing educational material that promotes public awareness and encourages waste minimisation and reuse.

- WST METH 9** As appropriate, encourage or promote:
- (a) territorial authorities to provide services or incentives to reduce waste volumes requiring disposal;
  - (b) the provision of and access to community recycling facilities;
  - (c) the diversion from landfill of organic wastes and construction and demolition wastes; and
  - (d) the provision of land filling facilities with future capacity to provide for the region's needs.

- WST METH 10** **Maintain, annually update and publicise** a register of all companies and organisations in Taranaki recovering materials for recycling, and periodically review options for the promotion of recycling, and the responses that the Taranaki Regional Council may appropriately make.

- WST METH 11** Advocate to central government that it establishes and supports accessible national recycling programmes for recoverable waste types such as glass, agrichemical containers, agricultural plastic wraps, plastics, papers, and metals.

The territorial authorities may consider the use of the following methods:

- WST METH 12** Apply programmes set out in the *Regional Waste Strategy for Taranaki* relating to waste minimisation and waste disposal.
- WST METH 13** Adopt appropriate **trade waste bylaws** to control the discharge of hazardous substances into the municipal sewerage systems.
- WST METH 14** **Promote** awareness, within its district for the need for waste minimisation.

**WST  
METH  
15**      **Provide services or incentives** to reduce waste volumes requiring disposal. Such services or incentives may relate to **recycling**, such as kerbside recyclable collection services, composting, provision of facilities for the collection and storage of recyclables at landfills, transfer stations or at other community depots, or incorporation of recycling services into any waste related contracts administered by, or on behalf of, each territorial authority.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policy and methods

The objective, policy and methods of implementation give effect to the Resource Management Act and establish a planning framework for the management of wastes. Their aim is to promote the efficient use of resources and avoid adverse effects associated with waste generation and disposal.

The policies and methods build on current approaches to this issue. They have proven to be acceptable to date in terms of promoting effective integrated management and achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### **WST ER 1**

The environmentally sound siting, management and operation of landfills and cleanfills within the region.

##### **WST ER 2**

Maintenance of a high level of access of the population to community recycling facilities.

##### **WST ER 3**

Twenty-five per cent of industrial and trade premises to have addressed waste minimisation and management

##### **WST ER 4**

Ninety-five per cent of garden wastes, sewage sludge, and commercial organic waste to be diverted from landfills.



## 13. Minerals

### 13.1 RECOGNISING AND PROVIDING FOR APPROPRIATE USE AND DEVELOPMENT OF MINERALS

#### Background to the issue

Minerals are natural and physical resources, the sustainable management of which are to be promoted under the Resource Management Act. Minerals include aggregate such as rocks, gravel and sand, coal, and petroleum minerals such as oil, gas and condensate. Taranaki is one of the most important mineral producing regions in New Zealand containing the country's only commercially producing oil and gas fields. Interest in petroleum exploration in the region remains high. There are quarries operating throughout the region producing a range of aggregates used in the roading building and construction industries and in the development and maintenance of the region's infrastructure. High quality aggregate which is accessible for extraction is in short supply in the Taranaki region. Access to and use and development of the region's mineral resources is important to New Zealand and to the Taranaki region to enable people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety. Without a reliable supply of minerals such as aggregate, these resources would need to be imported from other regions adding to transportation costs and environmental impacts and reducing economic benefits to local communities.

Mineral resources that do exist are fixed in location and unevenly distributed. An important issue for the region is therefore to ensure that mineral exploration, extraction and processing activities or potentially valuable sources are not compromised by other activities such as residential development which may be sensitive to the effects of mineral extraction activities. Even if mineral extraction and related activities adopt best management practices, some land uses will be incompatible with those activities. In practice, this can mean that the ability to extract and utilise the minerals may become compromised by sensitive land uses locating near mineral extraction and processing activities or along access routes. These "reverse sensitivity effects" need to be addressed.

Adverse environmental effects may result from mineral extraction and subsequent activities and some of these effects are potentially significant. For example there may be adverse effects on natural features and landscapes and on amenity and ecological values in the locality. There may be adverse effects on water quality. The relationship of Maori and their traditions and culture with their ancestral taonga may also be adversely affected. Where extraction activities occur in

water bodies or on the foreshore and seabed their may also be significant impacts on natural character, ecological values and on the functioning of physical processes in these dynamic and sensitive environments.

Mineral extraction and development operations therefore need to be planned and managed carefully and adverse effects of those activities need to be avoided, remedied or mitigated. Other objectives and policies in this Regional Policy Statement provide further guidance on managing the adverse effects of activities on other resources and the environment.

#### The significant issues in relation to recognising and providing for minerals are:

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| <b>MIN<br/>ISS 1</b> | <b>Recognising and providing for appropriate use and development of the region's mineral resources.</b>  |
| <b>MIN<br/>ISS 2</b> | <b>Managing the reverse sensitivity effects arising from incompatible subdivision, use and development in the vicinity of mineral extraction activities and along access routes that may compromise those mineral extraction activities.</b> |
| <b>MIN<br/>ISS 3</b> | <b>Avoiding, remedying or mitigating the adverse effects of the use and development of mineral resources on other natural and physical resources and the environment.</b>  |

#### OBJECTIVE

##### MIN OBJECTIVE 1

*To provide for use and development of the region's mineral resources while avoiding, remedying or mitigating any adverse effects on the environment.*

#### POLICIES

##### Recognising and providing for mineral development

###### MIN Policy 1

*Provision will be made to enable appropriate use and development of the region's mineral resources in a way that avoids, remedies or mitigates adverse effects on the environment.*

##### Managing the effects of incompatible activities on mineral resources

###### MIN Policy 2

*The adverse effects of subdivision, use and development activities that may be incompatible with mineral extraction activities by mainly limiting their operations or compromising their ability to extract minerals, will be avoided, remedied or mitigated.*

## Explanation of the policies

Policy 1 provides for appropriate use and development of the region's mineral resources to enable people and communities to meet their economic, social and cultural wellbeing. Provisions to enable appropriate use and development of minerals used in energy production and supply will contribute to New Zealand's energy supply needs while provisions to enable appropriate use of aggregates will facilitate construction and infrastructure developments important for the region's economic and social wellbeing. This must be done in a way that avoids, remedies or mitigates adverse effects on the environment. Policy 2 seeks to ensure that reverse sensitivity effects arising from activities that may be incompatible with mineral extraction activities and which may therefore unduly limit their activities, are avoided, remedied or mitigated.

## Related policies

All policies in **sections 5.1** (Soil erosion), **Section 5.2** (Soil health); **Section 5.3** (Hazardous substances and contaminated sites); **Section 6.1** (Sustainable water allocation); **Section 6.2** (Surface water quality); **Section 6.3** (Groundwater flows and quality); **Section 6.4** (Wetlands); **Section 6.6** (Use of river and lake beds); **Section 6.7** (Public access to rivers and lakes); **Section 7.1** (Air Quality); **Section 7.2** (Climate change); **Section 8.1** (Natural character of the coastal environment); **Section 8.2** (Coastal water quality); **Section 8.3** (Public access to the coastal environment); **Section 9.1** (Indigenous biodiversity); **Section 10.1** (Natural features and landscapes); **Section 10.2** (Historic heritage); **Section 10.3** (Amenity values); Policies 2 and 3, **Section 11.1** (Natural hazards); Policy 1, **Section 12** (Waste management); Policy 1, **Section 14**, (Energy); and all policies in **Section 15.2** (Regionally significant infrastructure and **Section 16** (Issues of significance to iwi).

## Methods of implementation

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

**MIN METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan** or **plans** with objectives, policies and methods that make appropriate provision for mineral exploration, extraction and processing and which ensure that adverse environmental effects are avoided, remedied or mitigated.

**MIN METH 2** Apply **regional rules** and resource consents to regulate, allow or prohibit mineral exploration, extraction or processing activities in an effects based fashion.

**MIN METH 3** Encourage and support as appropriate, the preparation and adoption of industry **codes of practice reflecting best practices**, to

avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse environmental effects of mineral exploration, extracting and processing activities.

**MIN METH 4** Liaise with territorial authorities, operators and industry representatives to improve access to **information** on the value and distribution of the region's mineral resources.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following methods:

**MIN METH 5** Include in **district plans** and in **resource consents**, provisions or conditions that make appropriate provision for mineral exploration, extraction and processing activities and which ensure that adverse environmental effects are avoided, remedied or mitigated including rules in district plans that allow, regulate or prohibit mineral exploration, extraction or processing activities in an effects based fashion.

**MIN METH 6** Include in **district plans** provisions for avoiding, remedying or mitigating reverse sensitivity effects which may arise through sensitive activities such as dwellings, child care centres, educational facilities and other community facilities and incompatible land uses, seeking to locate in close proximity to mineral extraction operations.

**MIN METH 7** Encourage and support as appropriate the preparation and adoption of **industry codes of practice reflecting best practices**, to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse environmental effects of mineral exploration, extraction and processing activities.

**MIN METH 8** Liaise with relevant agencies and industry representatives to improve access to **information** on the value and distribution of the region's mineral resources.

## Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for providing for the use and development of mineral resources in the Taranaki region. Minerals are natural and physical resources and their sustainable management is to be promoted under the Act.

Access to and development of mineral resources is important for the economic, social and cultural wellbeing of people and communities in Taranaki. Some mineral deposits in Taranaki are of national importance. However there may be adverse environmental effects from mineral exploration, extraction and processing that must be avoided, remedied or mitigated. Furthermore, the ability to use and develop mineral resources may be unduly compromised by allowing incompatible activities to locate near mineral extraction activities. These matters are addressed in the objectives and policies. The implementation methods identify that the appropriate mechanisms to implement the policies are at the regional and district plans and resource consent levels. Codes of good practice can also assist in reducing conflicts. Information on the distribution and value of mineral resources can increase public awareness of their location and importance.

The policies and methods build on current approaches to this issue. They have proven to be effective in promoting integrated management and in achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and benefits and costs.

#### **Environmental results anticipated**

##### **MIN ER1**

*Appropriate access to and use of mineral resources is provided.*

##### **MIN ER2**

*Adverse effects of mineral exploration, extraction and processing are avoided, remedied or mitigated.*

##### **MIN ER3**

*Minimal incidences of conflict between incompatible land uses.*





## 14. Energy

---

### 14.1 SUSTAINABLY MANAGING ENERGY

#### Background to the issue

Energy is essential to the way we live our lives. Energy is only a resource insofar as other natural and physical resources (for example natural gas) may have their stored or potential energy released to do useful work. Energy, as a resource, is used to provide electricity, heat and transport. Energy enables people to provide for their well-being, health and safety, and is a key factor in the regional (and national) economy.

Taranaki contains very good sources of renewable and non-renewable energy. However, the region is nationally significant in that it is currently New Zealand's only hydrocarbon producing area. Taranaki is also a significant contributor to New Zealand's electricity generation and distribution infrastructure. Major generators include four hydroelectricity power stations (Mangorei, Motukawa, Patea and Opunake), the New Plymouth gas-fired Power Station, the Taranaki Combined Cycle Power Station at Stratford and several smaller generators and co-generation plants. Major gas and electricity transmission lines also traverse the region.

As New Zealand's energy consumption increases, the country faces specific challenges in relation to securing reliable and affordable energy supplies. In response to these challenges, Taranaki can, under the Resource Management Act, promote energy efficiency, energy conservation and the use of renewable energy resources. Changes made to the Resource Management Act in 2004 mean that energy efficiency and the use and development of renewable energy are matters to which the Council must have particular regard under Section 7 of the Act. Given the national context, it is important for local government to recognise the use and development of renewable energy and increasing energy efficiency and energy conservation as important resource management issues. In Taranaki, there is potential to develop renewable energy from wind, solar, marine, geothermal, and biomass energy sources and further opportunities to develop micro and mini hydroelectricity generation. The use and development of renewable energy can be in a number of forms. At the domestic scale there are various passive approaches including correct orientation of buildings towards the sun to assist passive heating, cooling and natural lighting. Significant gains can be made through solar water heating or solar panels in dwellings and there is potential for small scale wind generation.

Of the different renewable energy options currently commercially viable in New Zealand and overseas, the indication is that at the utility scale, wind energy is one that is likely to be given effect to in coming years. Parts of the region contain good in-situ wind resources as well as land capacity for wind energy facilities. Other options such as large scale solar generation, geothermal, biomass or wave energy may become more viable in the future. The technologies associated with some of these resources such as biomass and tidal, wave and ocean current are still developing. Possibilities for energy from biomass include ethanol for transport fuels from grain crops and electrical energy from biomass from forestry sources. Other probabilities are biomass from livestock farming and associated processing industries and from sewage and solid waste.

There is some remaining hydroelectricity generation potential in Taranaki mainly in mini, small and medium scale projects and potential also in energy from geothermal resources. However, it is likely that the temperatures and flow rates obtained from geothermal sources would be too low for electricity generation and would be more suited to direct use applications such as timber drying, dairy processing, horticulture, space heating and other applications. Temperatures in some abandoned oil and gas exploration wells are sufficient for a range of direct use applications provided adequate flows can be obtained.

Developments of renewable energy facilities can occur at a large scale or in environmentally sensitive areas and can potentially have adverse environmental effects. Particular issues include landscape and amenity effects or effects on river flows and instream ecology. Wind energy facilities for example by necessity are located in open or in elevated locations in coastal or rural areas and such facilities can have effects on landscape and amenity values that need to be assessed and considered.

Promoting energy efficiency involves making better use of energy resources and conserving energy resources. Making better use of energy can reduce demands on energy resources and energy costs and thereby delay the need for investment in new energy supplies and infrastructure. It can also improve energy security by reducing the possibility of energy demands exceeding the supply of energy that is economically or physically available.

Energy efficiency can also be promoted by reducing losses in the transmission of energy by, for example, locating energy production closer to points of use or demand.

There are other resource management issues relating to energy use, development and consumption. These issues relate to avoiding adverse environmental effects (including the effects of climate change) and providing for the safe and efficient operation of network utilities and other infrastructure of regional significance. These issues are not, however, unique to the energy sector and have been addressed in other sections of the Regional Policy Statement.

Energy is specifically identified under the RMA as a natural and physical resource whose sustainable management is to be promoted. To promote the sustainable management of energy it is necessary to promote an adequate supply of energy to enable people and communities to provide for their economic and social wellbeing and for their health and safety. It is also necessary to promote renewable energy and efficiency in the production, use and transmission of energy.

In addition one of the functions of regional council's under the RMA is the strategic integration of infrastructure with land use through objectives, policies and methods. This will assist in the efficient production, transmission and supply of energy in Taranaki.

Regional Councils and territorial authorities also address the environmental effects of energy production, transmission and supply. These issues are addressed elsewhere in this Regional Policy Statement.

**The significant issues for the Taranaki region in relation to the sustainable management of energy under the Resource Management Act are:**

<b>ENE ISS 1</b>	<b>Promoting an adequate supply of energy to Taranaki and New Zealand.</b>
<b>ENE ISS 2</b>	<b>Promoting efficiency in the use, production and transmission of energy.</b>
<b>ENE ISS 3</b>	<b>Promoting the use and development of renewable energy resources.</b>

## OBJECTIVES

### **ENE OBJECTIVE 1**

***To promote the exploration, development, production, transmission and distribution of energy to meet the energy supply needs of the region and New Zealand in a manner that avoids, remedies or mitigates adverse effects on the environment.***

### **ENE OBJECTIVE 2**

***To promote the use and development of renewable sources of energy in a manner that avoids, remedies or mitigates adverse effects on the environment.***

### **ENE OBJECTIVE 3**

***To increase efficiency in the exploration, development use, production, transmission and distribution of energy.***

## POLICIES

### Energy supply

#### **ENE POLICY 1**

*Provision will be made for the exploration, development, production, transmission and distribution of energy in Taranaki to enable people and communities access to an adequate supply of energy and thereby to provide for their economic and social wellbeing and for their health and safety.*

### Energy efficiency

#### **ENE POLICY 2**

*Efficiency in the use, production and transmission of energy by users of natural and physical resources will be encouraged as far as is practicable and appropriate having particular regard to:*

- (a) energy requirements of urban form, subdivision patterns and site orientation;*
- (b) the design, location and operation of buildings and other structures;*
- (c) transport modes and patterns;*
- (d) use of appropriate energy saving technologies in industrial, commercial and residential situations;*
- (e) waste management including the minimisation, recovery, re-use and recycling of solid wastes and other contaminants, provided that the energy required to carry out these measures is less than that required to produce new products or materials;*
- (f) research into, and development of, alternative energy sources and more energy efficient methods (both traditional and alternative) in the production and transmission of energy; and*
- (g) the respective roles, functions, and responsibilities of particular agencies.*

### Promotion of renewable energy

#### **ENE POLICY 3**

*The use and development of renewable energy resources will be promoted whilst avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects on the environment as far as practicable.*

### Energy Transmission

#### **ENE POLICY 4**

*Provisions shall be included that appropriately recognise the importance of corridors to facilitate the ongoing operation, maintenance, upgrading and*

*development of energy transmission and the need to protect such corridors from activities that impede their efficient operation.*

### Explanation of the policies

Policies 1 to 4 give effect to the requirements of the Resource Management Act. In particular, they address matters set out in section 7 of the Resource Management Act – namely, the efficient use and development of natural and physical resources (section 7(b)), efficiency of the end use of energy (section 7(ba)) and the benefits to be derived from the use and development of renewable energy (section 7(j)).

Policy 1 seeks to ensure that Taranaki has an adequate supply of energy to meet the needs of people and communities in Taranaki and New Zealand. These energy needs may be met from either non-renewable or renewable sources.

Policy 2 seeks to encourage energy efficiency, thereby reducing the possibility of energy demands exceeding the economically or physically available supply of energy. Efficient use of energy is defined as consuming the minimum amount of energy for the maximum desired output. Policy 1 identifies a number of areas where (by reducing demands on energy resources or adopting energy conservation measures) regional and district councils can contribute to promoting energy efficiencies. The Government has adopted a target of at least a 20% improvement in economy-wide energy efficiency by 2012.

Policy 3 recognises that renewable sources of energy must be developed and maximised to ensure the secure supply of energy. Possible sources of renewable energy in Taranaki include hydro, wind, marine, solar, geothermal and biomass.

The Government has adopted a series of programme related targets for energy efficiency which seek to achieve 30 PJ of savings in non-transport energy per year by 2025, 9.5 PJ of additional direct use renewable energy per year by 2025 and 20 PJ of energy savings in the transport sector by 2015.

Encouraging the use and development of renewable energy resources under Policy 3 will also require consideration of the actual or potential adverse effects on the environment from development of renewable energy resources (including effects on people and communities), as well as the benefits to be obtained from such use and development. However, avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse environmental effects as far as practicable under Policy 3 does not necessarily mean that any use and development of resources that avoids, remedies or mitigates adverse environmental effects as far as practicable, will be

acceptable - adverse environmental effects must be managed in a way that gives effect to the Act's sustainable management purpose. Adverse effects may include impacts on areas of high landscape value; the amenity values enjoyed by nearby residents and communities; the natural character and ecological values of coastal areas and water bodies and effects on other competing uses of the same resource (such as recreational use of rivers and coastal areas and water abstraction for industry or community supply). The potential benefits of renewable energy include: added security and reliability of energy supply; reduction in greenhouse gas and other emissions to air; reductions in dependence on the national grid; reduction in transmission losses; economic development opportunities for the district or region and contribution to New Zealand's renewable energy target. An overall balancing of costs and benefits will be required but the use of renewable energy resources should promote the overall sustainable management of resources. The matters that may be considered in this regard include: the scale of the proposal (small, large, widespread, site-specific); the degree of effect (extent, coverage, magnitude); the type of effects (variety, characteristics); benefits (local, regional, national); the environmental values affected and whether these values are of local, regional or national significance; and the extent to which effects can be avoided, remedied or mitigated.

Because of the circumstances around the development of specific renewable energy proposals will vary widely according to the individual proposal and its location, consideration of all other related issues, objectives and policies in this Regional Policy Statement will be required. These matters will be considered in more detail when regional and district plans are prepared or reviewed or when individual development proposals are being considered.

The National Grid is a dynamic and linear inter-regional network. With structures of such a significant scale there is a reduced ability to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects. Corridors are important for the efficient transmission of energy. The operation, maintenance and future development of the transmission network can be significantly constrained by the adverse environmental impact of encroaching activities and development (reverse sensitivity). Interference with these corridors from vegetation planting or the construction of buildings and other structures near lines can cause power outages or disruption to power supplies that can affect the reliability of supply to users and the overall efficiency of transmission. Recognition of the existing transmission line corridors within the Taranaki region would ensure that non-compatible land uses are kept away from the lines and any potential adverse effects on the lines are avoided, remedied or mitigated

thereby ensuring that the corridors can continue to meet the ongoing energy needs of the community. Additionally, it will ensure that adverse effects of the transmission lines are avoided, remedied or mitigated and that the security of electricity within the district and beyond is maintained. Policy 4 highlights the need to recognise this issue in resource management and is also directly promoted by Policies 2 and 5 of the National Policy Statement on Electricity Transmission (NPSET) 2008.

#### Related policies

All policies in **Sections 5.1** [Soil erosion]; **Section 5.2** [Soil health]; **Section 5.3** [Hazardous substances and contaminated sites]; **Section 6.1** [Sustainable water allocation]; **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; Policy 1 in **Section 6.5** [Land drainage and associated diversions]; all the policies in **Section 6.6** [Use of river and lake beds] and **Section 6.7** [Public access to rivers and lakes]; Policy 1 in **Section 7.1** [Air quality]; Policy 1 in **Section 7.2** [Climate change]; all the policies in **Section 8.1** [Natural character of the coastal environment]; **Section 8.2** [Coastal water quality]; and **Section 8.3** [Public access to the coastal environment]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; all the policies in **Section 10.1** [Natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.2** [Historic heritage]; **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; **Section 11** [Natural hazards]; **Section 12** [Waste management]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; **Section 15.1** [Sustainable urban development]; **Section 15.2** [Regionally significant infrastructure]; and **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- ENE METH 1** **Advocate**, as appropriate, to:
- (a) (central government that it:
- develop and implement national policies and strategies or codes of practices that contribute to sustainable management of energy;
  - support innovation and research in energy efficiency and renewable energy technologies, practices and processes;
  - facilitate research and development in order to enable New Zealand to continue to meet its energy needs; and
  - ensure reliable and affordable energy supply;
  - district councils that district plans are consistent with the objectives, policies and methods of the Regional Policy Statement regarding energy efficiency and the promotion of

- renewable energy; and
- relevant industries, agencies and other groups on proposed developments, policies or management strategies that are likely to have a particularly significant impact on the sustainable management of energy and associated natural and physical resources.

**ENE METH 2** Participate, as appropriate, in central government initiatives in the formulation and implementation of a **New Zealand energy strategy**, consistent with the Council's statutory functions.

**ENE METH 3** Support the development of industry **code of practices** for renewable energy production.

**ENE METH 4** Include provisions in **regional plans** that make appropriate provision for the exploration, development, production, transmission and distribution of energy.

**ENE METH 5** Have regard to opportunities, and provide appropriate encouragement for the use and development of renewable energy in the preparation and review of **regional plans**.

**ENE METH 6** Support the provision of **advice and information** to landowners, resource users and the public and in the management of the region's natural and physical resources:

- (a) generally promote awareness of sustainable energy issues;
- (b) promote the conservation and efficiency of use of energy; and
- (c) promote the use and development of renewable energy.

**ENE METH 7** Continue to **gather information** on the state of technology and potential future technologies for energy efficiency and the use and development of renewable energy.

**ENE METH 8** Maintain and implement as appropriate:

- (a) the **Regional Land Transport Strategy for Taranaki** that encourages and promotes the efficient use of energy in the transport sector; and
- (b) the **Regional Waste Management Strategy for Taranaki** that seeks to promote waste minimisation and recycling.

**ENE METH 9** Consider membership of the **Communities for Climate Change Protection (New Zealand)**, which would involve the Council taking actions including the implementation, monitoring and reporting of an action plan to increase energy efficiency and reduce greenhouse gas emissions.

**Territorial authorities** may wish to consider the following methods:

**ENE METH 10** Include provisions in **district plans** that make appropriate provision for the exploration, development, production, transmission and distribution of energy.

**ENE METH 11** Include provisions in **district plans** promoting energy efficient urban forms and travel patterns, subdivision patterns and site orientation.

**ENE METH 12** **Encourage** energy efficient building design.

**ENE METH 13** Include provisions in **district plans** that encourage the development of renewable energy resources.

**ENE METH 14** Advocate for **efficiency in the use of energy** at the domestic, household residential level as well as on a larger commercial scale.

**ENE METH 15** Develop and implement **district land transport programmes** that give appropriate consideration to the efficient use of energy in the transport sector.

management of sustainable energy development as well as providing appropriate guidance to district councils. Through the provision of advice and information, advocacy and the consideration of energy related matters when developing policy in this Regional Policy Statement and in regional plans, the Taranaki Regional Council will support and encourage energy efficiency and the use and development of renewable energy. Territorial authorities, through their control of land use and urban development, and their functions under the Building Act, have further opportunities to encourage energy efficiency and the use and development of renewable energy. Broader advocacy methods are also consistent with the matters of energy efficiency and conservation and increased use of renewable energy included in Section 7 of the Act. This Statement is to have particular regard to the benefits to be derived from the use and development of renewable energy. This is to be considered within a wider context of central government project and policy frameworks to address climate change, continued improvement in energy efficiency and an increase in consumer energy to be supplied from renewable sources. Parts of the region could provide significant renewable energy resources (for example from wind) and these have the potential to contribute significantly to renewable energy development in New Zealand.

Provisions in regional and district plans could be developed to reflect differences in scale, and therefore environmental effects of renewable energy projects. For example, domestic or small scale developments such as domestic solar or wind or micro hydro developments, with minor or acceptable environmental effects, could be provided for in plans (subject to appropriate conditions) to promote such developments. Whilst renewable energy developments provide recognised environmental and economic benefits they can also have potential adverse environmental effects that must be considered. The development of some renewable energy sources such as wind energy facilities need to occur at specific locations. These locations may include ridgelines, hilltops or other elevated positions or coastal or rural locations. There are numerous variables that need to be considered when a site is being assessed for renewable energy developments such as wind facilities. Of significance is the presence of a viable resource. However other important aspects include constructability, access via transmission to the national grid or local electricity distribution network, environmental factors, land tenure and the potential scale of development. All these aspects may combine to limit the availability of commercially viable wind energy and other renewable energy facility sites. This can lead to potential conflict with landscape and amenity values and the nature, scale and intensity of development. However, renewable energy

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for promoting energy efficiency and the use and development of renewable energy sources.

It is not considered appropriate in the Regional Policy Statement to impose regulatory management of energy generation or transmission beyond the requirements set out in the Resource Management Act (e.g. the control of abstractions and discharges). The Ministry of Economic Development, Electricity Commission and the Energy Efficiency and Conservation Authority, are primarily responsible for national energy policy setting, and for regulating and providing information on the sustainable management of energy. However, regional councils have an important leadership and integration role within the region in supporting, planning for, and in the

developments such as wind energy facilities may be able to successfully co-exist if adverse effects on the environment, including the natural character of the coast, ecological, heritage, landscape and amenity values and cumulative impacts are appropriately avoided, remedied or mitigated. Most of these potential conflicts will need to be carefully managed and assessed on a case-by-case basis via district plan provisions. For larger scale developments with more significant environmental effects, plans could clearly set out the matters that the Councils would consider in assessing such projects.

The policies and methods build on current approaches to this issue. They have proven to be acceptable to date in terms of promoting effective integrated management and achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### **Environmental results anticipated**

##### ***ENE ER 1***

*An adequate supply of energy to meet the needs of people and communities in Taranaki and New Zealand.*

##### ***ENE ER 2***

*Increased public awareness of energy conservation and efficiency.*

##### ***ENE ER 3***

*Increased use and development of renewable energy resources.*

## 15. The built environment

This section identifies resource management issues of regional significance, which have their primary effect on Taranaki's built environment. The term 'built environment' refers to all those structures, facilities and other physical resources built by people. It includes urban and rural settlements, telecommunication and utility networks, transportation systems, sewerage and water systems, dams and flood control structures, and recreational facilities.

Resource management issues of regional significance relating to the Taranaki region's built environment are grouped under the headings of:

- promoting sustainable urban development
- providing for regionally significant infrastructure.

There is a close relationship between these two issues and a number of the methods of implementation of the policies are common to both issues.

### 15.1 PROMOTING SUSTAINABLE URBAN DEVELOPMENT

#### Background to the issue

Urban sustainability is defined as a process of managing urban change to improve the quality of life by delivering better social, environmental and economic outcomes for all people in the present and in the future.

Urban development in Taranaki is concentrated around New Plymouth and its peri-urban areas and a number of smaller towns including Hawera, Stratford, Waitara, Inglewood, Opunake and Patea. The concentration of population in New Plymouth and smaller urban settlements, combined with the sparse distribution in other parts of the region, has implications for access, the utilisation and management of natural and physical resources and the delivery of services. Decisions about the location of activities and the form (shape of settlements) and density (distribution of activities and their interrelationships) are major influences on the social, cultural and economic well-being of people and communities and on sustainable resource use.

It is generally recognised that there is a need to create and maintain urban environments that are sustainable, function well, are accessible, and provide a safe, healthy and stimulating environment. In so doing, those who live in and visit urban areas value them. Conversely, uncoordinated development or insufficient or poor quality development can result in a range of effects including traffic congestion, reduced amenity values, unsustainable energy use, overloaded

urban infrastructure (water supply, wastewater treatment, transport, energy, and housing), a lack of distinctive identity, social isolation and, in some cases health issues.

**The significant issue in relation to promoting sustainable urban development in Taranaki is:**

**SUD ISS 1 Promoting sustainable urban development in the Taranaki region.**

#### OBJECTIVE

##### SUD OBJECTIVE 1

**To promote sustainable urban development in the Taranaki region.**

#### POLICY

##### Sustainable urban development

##### SUD POLICY 1

*To promote sustainable development in urban areas by:*

- encouraging high quality urban design, including the maintenance and enhancement of amenity values;*
- promoting choices in housing, work place and recreation opportunities;*
- promoting energy efficiency in urban forms, site layout and building design;*
- providing for regionally significant infrastructure;*
- integrating the maintenance, upgrading or provision of infrastructure with land use;*
- integrating transport networks, connections and modes to enable the sustainable and efficient movement of people, goods and services, encouraging travel choice and low-impact forms of travel including opportunities for walking, cycling and public transport;*
- promoting the maintenance, enhancement or protection of land, air and water resources within urban areas or affected by urban activities;*
- protecting indigenous biodiversity and historic heritage; and*
- avoiding or mitigating natural and other hazards.*

##### Explanation of the policy

Policy 1 identifies qualities and attributes that contribute to sustainable urban development. These qualities and attributes collectively promote sustainable management of natural and physical resources and the social, cultural and economic well-being of people living in urban areas.

Policy 1(a) incorporates concepts of aesthetically pleasing, stimulating and vibrant urban forms and building designs that also function safely and

efficiently. High quality urban design creates pleasant living environments free of nuisance arising from excessive traffic, noise, odours and contaminants. This will include the need to avoid encroachment of sensitive activities into rural areas that may result in reverse sensitivity effects on established and legitimate rural activities. It also involves design features aimed at maintaining and further enhancing amenity values. Policy 1(b) seeks to promote a range of housing, employment and recreation opportunities to meet the diverse needs of residents. Policy 1(c) recognises that gains in energy efficiency can be made through urban form, site layout and building design. The integration of infrastructure with land use (Policy 1(d)) seeks to ensure that adverse effects on the environment do not arise from inadequate infrastructure (such as stormwater sewerage, water or roading infrastructure). This may be achieved through infrastructure planning, land use controls, or a combination of both. The integration of transport networks and modes (Policy 1(e)) can promote sustainable development in urban areas by enhancing accessibility and social interaction, promoting health and safety and reducing environmental impacts. Policy 1(f) seeks to promote sustainable development in urban areas by maintaining, enhancing or protecting natural resources such as land and soil resources, air quality and waterways and wetlands in urban areas while Policy 1(g) recognises that protecting historic heritage such as historic buildings or places, archaeological sites and wāhi tapu in urban areas is also an important part of sustainable urban development. Under Policy 1(h) development in urban areas should seek to avoid or mitigate natural and other hazards.

#### Related policies

All policies in **Sections 5.1** [Soil erosion]; **Section 5.2** [Soil health]; **Section 5.3** [Hazardous substances and contaminated sites]; **Section 6.1** [Surface water allocation]; **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; **Section 6.4** [Wetlands]; **Section 6.5** [Land drainage and associated diversions]; **Section 6.6** [Use of river and lake beds]; **Section 6.7** [Public access to rivers and lakes]; **Section 7.1** [Air quality]; **Section 8.1** [Natural character of the coastal environment]; **Section 8.2** [Coastal water quality]; **Section 8.3** [Public access to the coastal environment]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; all policies in **Section 10.1** [Outstanding natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.2** [Historic heritage]; **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; **Section 14** [Energy]; **Section 15.2** [Regionally significant infrastructure]; and **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

**SUD METH 1** As appropriate, **implement** those methods as outlined in Parts B and C of this Regional Policy Statement in relation to the Taranaki Regional Council's functions and responsibilities regarding the use and development of natural and physical resources, natural landscapes and heritage values and the built environment.

**SUD METH 2** Maintain and implement as appropriate the **Regional Land Transport Strategy for Taranaki** under the Land Transport Management Act 2003 with objectives, policies and methods promoting integrated land use and transport planning, travel demand management, the use of alternative transport modes, and an environmentally sustainable, safe, efficient and affordable land transport system.

**SUD METH 3** **Support** the maintenance and enhancement of regionally significant gardens and, in conjunction with the territorial authorities of the region, consider supporting other regionally significant recreational, cultural and heritage amenities.

**SUD METH 4** Prepare and implement, in conjunction with the region's three territorial authorities and other transport authorities, a **regional walkways and cycleways strategy**.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following methods:

**SUD METH 5** Include in **district plans or resource consents**, provisions or conditions that address sustainable urban development issues including among others:

- (a) objectives, policies, methods, rules and performance standards controlling land use, development and subdivision;
- (b) building and development controls or criteria;
- (c) esplanade reserves or strips or access strips; and
- (d) designations or other provision for public works.

**SUD METH 6** Include provisions in **district land transport programmes** that promote the safety and efficiency of district roading infrastructure in order to achieve an integrated, safe, efficient and sustainable land transport system.



- SUD METH 7** **Encourage** the use of corridors for public network utilities where feasible and practical and where the use of corridors does not conflict with specific coverage objectives of a utility provider so as to contain the geographic effects on amenity values of such utilities to a defined and limited area. The use of corridors should also recognise that conflicts can occur between various utilities.
- SUD METH 8** Grant **rate relief** on land mandatorily or voluntarily protected, for the purpose of maintaining or enhancing landscape or heritage values.
- SUD METH 9** Provide, as appropriate, **works and services** within the district to modify the causes or effects or both, of natural hazards.
- SUD METH 11** Generally **promote** good planning, building design and urban design that give effect to the New Zealand Urban Design Protocol (2005) including the strategic integration of local, regional and national infrastructure and land use.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods establish a policy framework for the promotion of sustainable urban development in the Taranaki region. Their aim is to address the adverse effects of urban development or associated with a lack of urban development.

Through the implementation of the policies and methods, the Council can promote sustainable urban development. The policies and methods build on current approaches. They have proven to be successful to date in terms of achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### **SUD ER 1**

*Avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects associated with urban development or a lack of urban development.*

## 15.2 PROVIDING FOR REGIONALLY SIGNIFICANT INFRASTRUCTURE

### Background to the issue

The region's network utilities and other infrastructure are physical resources of considerable importance to Taranaki. They support human settlements and enable people and communities to meet their social,

economic and cultural needs. Some network utilities and other infrastructure are of national as well as regional importance.

Network utilities are utilities which form part of a network and include the supply and distribution of gas, electricity, telecommunications, radio communications, water, stormwater, sewerage and wastewater systems, roads, railways, airports, navigational aids, and meteorological operations and associated support structures throughout the region.

Taranaki is generally well connected and serviced from a roading infrastructural perspective relative to its size and population. However, there are roading and transport infrastructure issues that require ongoing attention if Taranaki is to meet its current and anticipated growth and development needs. Some of these issues concern route security and reliability (particularly in relation to State Highway 3 north and south and State Highway 43), network efficiency and capacity (for example in relation to our rural roads and urban New Plymouth) and safety issues such as passing opportunities, road and bridge widths etc.

Taranaki has approximately 2,700 kilometres of sealed rural roads, including state highways, in Taranaki. In addition, there are many kilometres of sealed roads in urban areas and other roads throughout the region. These provide vital access and communication links to and within the region. The Marton to New Plymouth and Stratford to Taumarunui railway connects the region with the national rail network and provide an important freight transport service. Port Taranaki is the only major deep-water port on the west coast of New Zealand and is a facility of regional significance. New Plymouth Airport is the only fully commercial air freight and passenger airport in the region.

The region also contains an extensive network of oil and gas and associated product pipelines. These pipelines run from various oil and gas field to production stations, the Maui and Kapuni gas treatment plants, the Omata Tank Farm, Port Taranaki, major industrial petrochemical processing plants, thermal power stations in New Plymouth and Stratford and to domestic consumers throughout the North Island. High voltage electricity transmission lines also run from the New Plymouth and Stratford power stations to various locations throughout the North Island. In addition, a network of power transmission lines service hydroelectricity stations and other electricity generators.

The region's telecommunication and radio communication network provides an important everyday and emergency facility to the people of the region and to the business community. Other

examples include the region's flood protection and land drainage schemes, which are important for the protection of individual and community assets, productive capability, community safety and other utility networks. Hydroelectric dams on the Waiwhakaiho, Manganui, Patea, Waiaua rivers are also significant.

There is a need to recognise the positive social, economic and environmental benefits that accrue nationally and regionally from the establishment and continued operation of network utilities and other regionally significant infrastructure. There is also a need to manage the potential for certain activities to disrupt, or risk disruption to, the safe and efficient operation of network utilities and other regionally significant infrastructure. Where incompatible activities have been allowed to establish too close to certain regionally significant infrastructure, e.g. electricity transmission lines there is increased exposure to adverse effects such as the accumulation of dust on conductors, risk to structural integrity of pylons, restricted access for maintenance, and reduction in safety distances or public safety generally.

As with other forms of use and development, there are also issues associated with avoiding, remedying and mitigating adverse effects on the environment arising from the construction, use and maintenance of regionally significant infrastructure. However, such matters are addressed elsewhere in this Regional Policy Statement.

**The significant issues in relation to Taranaki's regionally significant infrastructure are:**

**INF  
ISS 1**      **Recognising and providing for the establishment and continued operation of regionally significant infrastructure (including where this is of national importance), particularly where they provide benefits and/or physically cross district and or regional boundaries.**

**INF  
ISS 2**      **Managing adverse effects arising from subdivision, use and development on the safe and efficient operation of regionally significant infrastructure, (including where this is of national importance).**

**INF  
ISS 3**      **Strategically integrating infrastructure and land use.**

## **OBJECTIVE**

### **INF OBJECTIVE 1**

**To provide for the continued safe and efficient operation of the region's network utilities and other infrastructure of regional significance (including where**

**this is of national importance), while avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects on the environment.**

## **POLICIES**

### **Provision for physical infrastructure of regional significance**

#### **INF POLICY 1**

*Provision will be made for the efficient and effective establishment, operation, maintenance and upgrading of network utilities and other physical infrastructure of regional significance (including where this is of national importance) and provision for any adverse effects of their establishment to be avoided, remedied or mitigated as far as is practicable.*

### **Adverse effects on physical infrastructure of regional significance**

#### **INF POLICY 2**

*The adverse effects of subdivision, use and development on the safety, efficiency, operation, maintenance and upgrading of the region's network utilities and on other physical infrastructure of regional significance (including where this is of national importance) will be avoided or mitigated.*

### **Buffer corridors**

#### **INF POLICY 3**

*Buffer corridors shall be identified so that development incompatible with the National Grid is not located within such corridors and thereby ensuring reverse sensitivity effects are avoided.*

### **Integrated planning**

#### **INF POLICY 4**

*New land use generated by growth and development and the associated local, regional and national infrastructure to service that growth should be integrated and planned alongside one another to avoid either constraints being imposed on necessary growth and development by the lack of supporting infrastructure or to avoid unsustainable demands being placed on infrastructure to meet new growth.*

### **Explanation of the policies**

Policy 1 provides for the establishment of efficient and effective network utilities and other infrastructure and for the adverse effects of their establishment to be avoided, remedied and mitigated as far as is practicable. For example, the linear nature of the National Grid determines its form, shape and location across a number of different environments throughout New Zealand. When new transmission lines are proposed, technical, operational and security requirements associated with the transmission network can limit the extent to which it is feasible to avoid or mitigate all adverse environmental effects. Consequently in some cases it may be more

appropriate for new transmission lines to traverse parts of a sensitive environment to achieve a route with lower overall adverse effects. These situations will need to be determined on a case-by-case basis. Issues relating to adverse effects on the environment arising from the construction and maintenance of network utilities and other regionally significant infrastructure (e.g. stormwater run-off, emissions to air, noise, discharges to land and water) are already addressed through other sections of the Regional Policy Statement. Accordingly, objectives, policies and methods of implementation in this section address recognising and providing for network utilities and other regionally significant infrastructure.

Policy 2 ensures that any adverse effects of subdivision, use and development, which would reduce the safe and efficient operation of network utilities and other regionally significant infrastructure, are avoided or mitigated.

The operation, maintenance and future development of the transmission network can be significantly constrained by the adverse environmental impact of encroaching activities and development (reverse sensitivity). Identifying appropriate buffer corridors under Policy 3 would ensure that non-compatible land uses are kept away from the lines and that any potential adverse effects of third party activities on the transmission network are appropriately managed to ensure the ongoing operation, maintenance, upgrading and development of the electricity transmission network is not compromised.

Activities that may have reverse sensitivity effects on the safe and efficient operation of regionally significant infrastructure should locate in areas where that infrastructure will not be affected.

Policy 4 recognises the need for planning for growth and development and the provision of local, regional and national infrastructure to proceed side-by-side in a coordinated and integrated way. This is to ensure that necessary growth and development is properly and appropriately serviced and also to ensure that unsustainable demands are not placed on Infrastructure. If this integration does not occur there is the potential for growth and development to be constrained or directed to less favourable areas with associated social, economic and environmental costs. A lack of integration may also lead to unsustainable demands being placed on infrastructure and funding leading to a reduction in the safety and efficiency of infrastructure such as the roading network from new growth or to inadequate provision of infrastructure. Hence the policy ensures there is closer integration between growth and development generated land use, roading and other infrastructure provision and funding at local, regional and national levels.

### Related policies

All policies in **Sections 5.1** [Soil erosion]; **Section 5.2** [Soil health]; **Section 5.3** [Hazardous substances and contaminated sites]; **Section 6.1** [Sustainable water allocation]; **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; **Section 6.5** [Land drainage and associated diversions]; **Section 6.6** [Use of river and lake beds]; **Section 6.7** [Public access to rivers and lakes]; **Section 7.1** [Air quality]; **Section 7.2** [Climate change]; **Section 8.1** [Natural character of the coastal environment]; **Section 8.2** [Coastal water quality]; **Section 8.3** [Public access to the coastal environment]; Policies 1 and 2 in **Section 9.1** [Indigenous biodiversity]; all policies in **Section 10.1** [Natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.2** [Historic heritage]; **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; **Section 14** [Energy]; **Section 15.1** [Sustainable urban development], and **Section 16** [Issues of significance to iwi].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- INF METH 1** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies and methods addressing adverse environmental effects on the safe and efficient operation of the region's network utilities and on other infrastructure of regional significance.
- INF METH 2** Through **regional rules** or conditions of resource consents, recognise the positive benefits of regional infrastructure and control adverse environmental effects on the safe and efficient operation of the region's network utilities and on other physical infrastructure of regional significance (including where this is of national importance).
- INF METH 3** Maintain and implement as appropriate the **Regional Land Transport Strategy for Taranaki** under the Land Transport Management Act 2003 with objectives, policies and methods promoting the safety and efficiency of the region's land transport network including promoting integrated, land use and transport planning, travel demand management and the use of alternative transport modes.
- INF METH 4** Maintain **river control and flood protection works** in the Lower Waitara River and the Waiwhakaiho River.
- INF METH 5** Recognise the **maintenance of existing infrastructure** including the trimming and removal of plants where these pose a risk

to the continuation of infrastructure operations in **riparian margins**, as an essential component for the supply of electricity to communities.

**INF METH 6** Take into account **current infrastructure corridors** in resource management decision making; avoid, remedy or mitigate any incompatible use or activity affecting those corridors and include appropriate protection and recognition of existing infrastructure corridors in district plans and on planning maps.

**INF METH 7** When considering an application for resource consent, notice of requirement or a change or variation to a district or regional plan that is likely to affect a transmission corridor, local authorities shall **consult with or notify the operator of the National Grid.**

**INF METH 8** Give effect to the **New Zealand Code of Practice for Electrical Safe Distances (NZECP34:2001)** prepared under the Electricity Act 1992, when establishing rules and considering applications for building structures and other activities near overhead electric lines support structures or conductors.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following methods:

**INF METH 9** Include in **district plans**, and conditions in **resource consents**, provisions or conditions that provide for the establishment and continued operation of regionally significant infrastructure (including where this is of national importance), and the control of adverse effects of subdivision, use and development of land on that infrastructure.

**INF METH 10** Include in **district plans** appropriate provisions (including designations) for network utilities and other infrastructure of regional significance (including where this is of national importance), and the procedures to be followed when proposing to undertake activities in proximity to these network utilities and infrastructure.

**INF METH 11** Recognise the **maintenance of existing infrastructure**, including the trimming and removal of plants where these pose a risk to the continuation of infrastructure operations in **riparian margins**, as an essential component for the supply of electricity to communities.

**INF METH 12** Include in district plans, long-term council community plans and conditions of resource consents, provisions or conditions that require the **location, intensity, structure, and staging of new land use** generated by growth and development to support and coordinate with the sustainable provision and funding of local, regional and national roading and other infrastructure. This includes by way of financial contributions and/or development contributions.

**INF METH 13** Include in district plans appropriate provisions requiring **structure or concept plans** for large scale urban land use changes.

**INF METH 14** Include in district plans appropriate provisions requiring new land use to demonstrate how it will be **serviced** by transport and other infrastructure.

**INF METH 15** Include provisions in **district land transport programmes** that promote the safety and efficiency of district roading infrastructure including promoting integrated land use and transport planning, travel demand management and the use of alternative transport modes.

**INF METH 16** **Encourage** the use of **corridors** for public network utilities where feasible and practical and where the use of corridors does not conflict with specific coverage objectives of a utility provider so as to contain the geographic effects on amenity values of such utilities to a defined and limited area. The use of corridors should also recognise that conflicts can occur between various utilities.

**INF METH 17** Take into account **current infrastructure corridors** in resource management decision making; avoid, remedy or mitigate any incompatible use or activity affecting those corridors and include appropriate protection and recognition of existing infrastructure corridors in district plans and on planning maps.

**INF METH 18** When considering an application for resource consent, notice of requirement or a change or variation to a district or regional plan that is likely to affect a transmission corridor, local authorities shall **consult with or notify the operator of the National Grid.**

**INF METH 19** Give effect to the **New Zealand Code of Practice for Electrical Safe Distances (NZECP34:2001)** prepared under the Electricity Act 1992, when establishing rules and considering applications for building structures and other activities near overhead electric lines support structures or conductors.

**Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods**

The objective, policies and methods of implementation establish a policy framework for providing for regionally significant infrastructure and network utilities. These network utilities and infrastructure are important for the economic and social wellbeing of people and communities in Taranaki and for their health and safety and play a vital role in the operation of daily life. During emergency situations, some are of national as well as regional importance. Provision for the safe, reliable and efficient functioning of such facilities and infrastructure and their maintenance and upgrading is provided for in this document in recognition of the importance of such physical resources. This Regional Policy Statement also recognises that it is not always practical or reasonable for network utilities or infrastructure to co-exist with other major utilities and that operational constraints may also exist and these must be recognised and provided for.

Through the implementation of regional plans and regional transport management strategies, the Council will recognise and provide for the positive benefits that accrue from the construction, use and maintenance of regionally significant infrastructure and network utilities.

Territorial authorities, through their control of land use and urban development, have further opportunities to recognise and provide for the safe and efficient establishment and operation of important physical infrastructural assets. Territorial authorities also have further opportunities to recognise and provide for closer integration between land use and infrastructure provision and funding in order to assist with the strategic integration of local, regional and national roading and other infrastructure and land use.

The policies and methods build on current approaches to this issue. They have proven to be acceptable to date in terms of promoting effective integrated management and achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

**Environmental results anticipated**

**INF ER 1**

*Continued operation of regionally significant infrastructure.*

**INF ER 2**

*Effective management of potential resource management conflicts so as to avoid, remedy or mitigate significant adverse effects on network utilities and infrastructure.*

**INF ER 3**

*New land use generated by growth and development strategically integrated with local, regional and national infrastructure, particularly transport so as to avoid an unsustainable approach to infrastructure provision and funding.*



## **Part C**

### **Resource management issues of significance to iwi**





## 16. Statement of resource management issues of significance to iwi authorities

Part C identifies the resource management issues of significance to iwi authorities in the region and presents the objectives, policies and methods of implementation to address those issues. These issues are summarised in Table 2.

**Table 2** Summary of resource management issues of significance to iwi authorities

Issues
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Taking into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (TOW)</li> <li>• Recognising kaitiakiatanga (KTA)</li> <li>• Recognising and providing for the relationship of Māori with ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga (REL)</li> <li>• Recognising cultural and spiritual values of tangata whenua in resource management processes (CSV)</li> </ul>

In relation to each issue, the Regional Policy Statement presents:

- an overview of the issue;
- the objectives sought to be achieved by the Regional Policy Statement to address that issue;
- the policies for the issues and objectives (and an explanation of those policies);
- the methods (actions, programmes) to implement the policies;
- the principal reasons for adopting the objectives, policies, and methods of implementation; and
- the environmental results anticipated from the implementation of those policies and methods.

Each of the issues, objectives, policies, methods of implementation and environmental results anticipated has been given a unique identifying number. This number is based on a three letter symbol (which relates to the subsection in this Part of the RPS in which the relevant issue, objective, etc is found) followed by a number 1, 2, 3, etc. For example all issues, objectives, policies and methods etc in the subsection entitled "Taking into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi" will be preceded by the letters TOW (for "Treaty of Waitangi"). Objective 1 for this issue will therefore read TOW Objective 1. Similarly Policy 1 will be TOW Policy 1 and Method 1, TOW Method 1 and so on. This allows each specific provision in this part of the document to be identified by a unique number.

In addition to the issues of significance to iwi authorities, the resource management issues presented in Part B [Resource Management Issues of Significance] of the Regional Policy Statement, which apply generally to the Taranaki region, will also be of relevance to iwi and complement the objectives,

policies and methods presented in this part of the Statement.

For the purposes of integrated management, this Part of the Regional Policy Statement also lists the methods the Taranaki Regional Council shall use to implement the policies and those methods which territorial authorities may wish to consider. The methods also refer to actions, procedures, programmes or techniques that might be applied by other agencies acting under other legislation.

In this Part of the Regional Policy Statement the terms 'iwi authorities' and 'iwi' are used to describe Taranaki tangata whenua. Iwi authority means the authority, which represents an iwi and which is recognised by that iwi as having authority to do so. This definition arose from the Treaty of Waitangi settlement process and the Resource Management Amendment Act 2005. The term iwi is used in the traditional and wider sense and means a tribe or grouping of Māori people descended from a common ancestor(s).

### 16.1 TAKING INTO ACCOUNT THE PRINCIPLES OF THE TREATY OF WAITANGI

#### Background to the issue

The tangata whenua of the region have particular interests and concerns in relation to the natural environment. Tangata whenua also wish to maintain meaningful and adequate input to the regional and district councils' decision-making and to have structures and processes in place to ensure that occurs.

All those exercising functions, duties and powers under the Act are required to take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi. A number of principles have been defined through the findings of the Waitangi Tribunal and decisions of the Court of Appeal including the principles of:

- kawanatanga – the Crown's right to govern and delegate resource management decision-making powers to local authorities
- rangatiratanga – the right of iwi to control, manage and use tribal resources according to their cultural preferences
- partnership – a relationship between iwi and central and local government based on the concepts of good faith, mutual respect, reasonable cooperation and compromise

- resource development – the facilitation of iwi resource development
- spiritual principle – recognition of the spiritual relationship that tangata whenua have with the environment.<sup>8</sup>

These principles establish guidelines to govern the relationship between Iwi o Taranaki and local government in the Taranaki region. In recognition of the evolutionary nature of this relationship, however, any attempt to explicitly define and limit the principles has been avoided. Rather it is expected that they will need to be revisited and adapted as legal and practical experience is gained over time.

The full text of the Treaty of Waitangi (both English and Māori versions) is contained in Appendix III.

**The significant issues in relation to taking into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi are:**

- TOW  
ISS 1**      **Forming an effective relationship while acknowledging the different perspectives on kawanatanga and rangatiratanga in resource management.**
- TOW  
ISS 2**      **The Taranaki Regional Council and three territorial authorities agreeing to a shared understanding with tangata whenua of the meaning and practical implications of taking into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi in terms of resource management.**

## OBJECTIVE

### TOW OBJECTIVE 1

*To take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi in the exercise of functions and powers under the Resource Management Act.*

## POLICIES

### Effective relationship

#### TOW POLICY 1

*Act cooperatively and in good faith, showing flexibility and responsiveness and a desire to engage with Māori for the good governance of the Taranaki region.*

### Treaty of Waitangi

#### TOW POLICY 2

*Management of natural and physical resources in the Taranaki region will be carried out in a manner that takes into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, including the principles of kawanatanga, rangatiratanga, partnership, active participation, resource development and spiritual recognition.*

<sup>8</sup> Solomon, M and Schofield R (1992): 'The Resource Management Act and the Treaty of Waitangi'.

## Explanation of the policies

Policy 1 will be achieved by local government establishing and maintaining effective working relationships with Māori in the governance of the region. This will be done in a manner that is inclusive and makes the best use of the resources of Māori and councils. Policy 2 requires that all those exercising functions, duties and powers under the Act take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.

## Related policies

All policies in **Sections 5.1** [Soil erosion]; **Section 5.2** [Soil health]; **Section 5.3** [Hazardous substances and contaminated sites]; **Section 6.1** [Surface water allocation]; **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; **Section 6.3** [Groundwater flows and quality]; **Section 6.4** [Wetlands]; **Section 6.5** [Land drainage and associated diversions]; **Section 6.6** [Use of river and lake beds]; **Section 6.7** [Public access to rivers and lakes]; **Section 7.1** [Air quality]; **Section 7.2** [Climate change]; **Section 8.1** [Natural character of the coastal environment]; **Section 8.2** [Coastal water quality]; **Section 8.3** [Public access to the coastal environment]; **Section 9** [Indigenous biodiversity]; **Section 10.1** [Natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.2** [Historic heritage]; **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; **Section 12** [Waste management]; **Section 14** [Energy]; **Section 15.1** [Sustainable urban development]; **Section 15.2** [Regionally significant infrastructure]; **Section 16.2** [Kaitiakiatanga]; **Section 16.3** [Ancestral lands]; and **Section 16.4** [Cultural and spiritual values].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- TOW  
METH 1**      Be guided in administering functions, powers and duties pursuant to the Act, by the **Declaration of Understanding** and a **Code of Conduct** developed jointly by the Taranaki Regional Council and Iwi o Taranaki.
- TOW  
METH 2**      Adopt those **methods of implementation** as outlined in sections 4 to 12 of Part B and Part C of this Regional Policy Statement and any other methods as are appropriate and agreed with relevant iwi authorities, to achieve the objective and implement the policy.
- TOW  
METH 3**      Consider the development of **memoranda of understanding** with iwi authorities to promote resource management and an effective relationship between the Taranaki Regional Council and iwi.

**TOW METH 4** When developing policies and processing resource consents, have regard to **statutory acknowledgements** where the Crown has formally acknowledged the statements made by iwi of the particular cultural, spiritual, historical, and traditional association of the iwi with particular areas.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following method:

**TOW METH 5** Those methods of implementation as outlined in sections 4 to 12 of Part B and Part C of this Regional Policy Statement that are appropriate for the district.

### **The Treaty of Waitangi/Te Tiriti o Waitangi A declaration of understanding between Iwi o Taranaki and the Taranaki Regional Council\***

*Article 1 of the Treaty gave the Crown the right to make laws for the “peace, order and good government of New Zealand”. This has become known as the ‘Principle of kawanatanga’. That right was qualified by an obligation to respect the ‘tino rangatiratanga’ rights of Iwi as guaranteed by Article II of the Treaty. This has become known as the ‘Principle of Rangatiratanga’.*

*In exercising its right of kawanatanga, the Crown has delegated authority for managing natural and physical resources to local authorities. In doing so, it has chosen to limit its Article II obligations to requiring local authorities to ‘recognise and provide’ for the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga, as a matter of national importance, to ‘have particular regard to’ kaitiakitanga, and to ‘take into account’ the principles of the Treaty, when making decisions.*

*For the Taranaki Regional Council, this means that it can draft policies and set objectives, methods and rules that have regional application. This, in effect, is the Council exercising its delegated right of kawanatanga to make laws that apply to Māori and non-Māori people alike. However, in carrying out this function, the Council must provide for the views and interests of tangata whenua to be represented at every stage of the process, including inception, development, implementation, and ongoing monitoring. In this way, the Council can be seen to be carrying out its restricted obligations to observe and respect te tino rangatiratanga rights of Iwi o Taranaki in relation to the sustainable management of natural and physical resources.*

*The legal authority of the Taranaki Regional Council to redress ownership claims of tangata whenua and hence to fully recognise and restore tino rangatiratanga under Article II, has been restricted by the kawanatanga rights which have been delegated by the Crown to the Council. These rights limit the Council’s authority to management issues only. Although this legal constraint is acknowledged, it is also accepted that for Iwi o Taranaki, the full recognition of tino rangatiratanga is dependent on the resolution of outstanding resource*

*ownership grievances. To the extent that the Council can recognise and enhance rangatiratanga interests in relating to management of resources, it will do so.*

*It is also acknowledged that there may be times when the management functions of the Taranaki Regional Council will conflict with the resource ownership claims of tangata whenua. At such times, the parties will, in co-operation and good faith, endeavour to work out acceptable solutions or compromises, bearing in mind that this may not always be practically or legally possible. As a minimum requirement, the Council will not act in a way that will worsen existing Treaty grievances or give rise to fresh grievances of tangata whenua.*

### **Code of Conduct**

*In taking into account the Principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, within the limits of the Resource Management Act, the Taranaki Regional Council will endeavour to:*

*Actively protect the mana taiao and taonga of Iwi o Taranaki by identifying and protecting, in a manner appropriate to the values of iwi, those natural and physical resources of significance to iwi.*

- 1. Recognise and respect the cultural and spiritual values of Iwi o Taranaki by ensuring that the use, development and protection of the region’s natural and physical resources are undertaken in a manner that protected and enhances the relationship of iwi with the environment.*
- 2. Actively promote and develop greater partnership in the management of the natural and physical resources of the region, between Iwi o Taranaki and the Taranaki Regional Council by exercising the utmost good faith, cooperation, reasonable compromise, flexibility and responsiveness.*
- 3. Promote active participation in the management process by enhancing the role of iwi within the preparation, implementation and review of resource management policies and plans.*
- 4. Ensure the rangatiratanga rights of tangata whenua are upheld in the management and development of resources by protecting the role and importance of kaitiaki, and the ability of iwi to develop their resources in accordance with their own customs and values.*

\* The Declaration of Understanding was developed in 1994. It should be noted that the Iwi of Nga Ruahine do not support the use of the word ‘acknowledged’ in paragraphs 4 and 5 of the declaration.

### **DECLARATION OF UNDERSTANDING AND CODE OF CONDUCT**

With regards to the Taranaki Regional Council’s responsibilities, the Council and Iwi o Taranaki have recorded a *Declaration of Understanding* and a *Code*

of *Conduct* that has assisted the Council in its interpretation and provides guidance in the implementation of the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi and which applies when giving effect to its resource management responsibilities.

The **Declaration of Understanding** establishes and records a basis of mutual understanding about the relationship between the devolved kawatanga responsibilities of the Taranaki Regional Council and the rangatiratanga rights of Iwi o Taranaki.

The **Code of Conduct** is an expression of the Taranaki Regional Council's commitment to take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi in the exercise of its resource management functions. The provisions in the Code are statements of general intent. Essentially, they represent what the Taranaki Regional Council together with iwi should be striving to achieve in the management of Taranaki's natural resources.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policy and methods

The objective, policy and methods of implementation give effect to the Resource Management Act and establish a planning framework for taking into account the Treaty of Waitangi in the management of natural and physical resources.

The policy and methods build on current approaches to this issue. They (and the Declaration of Understanding and the Code of Conduct) have proven to be acceptable to date in terms of promoting effective integrated management and achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### TOW ER 1

*Increased recognition and understanding of the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.*

##### TOW ER 2

*Resource management decisions which take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.*

## 16.2 RECOGNISING KAITIAKITANGA

### Background to the issue

Kaitiakitanga refers to the exercise of custodianship by an iwi or hapu over land and other taonga within the tribal rohe. It is descriptive of the relationship between Taranaki tangata and te taiao (the environment). It includes elements of guardianship, custodial protection, advocacy and the bearing of sacred messages (tohu or resource indicator).

A kaitiaki is a person or agent who performs the tasks of guardianship. Kaitiakitanga is based on the general understanding that people belong to the land and have a responsibility of kaitiaki to that land. Kaitiaki is linked inextricably to tino rangatiratanga (customary authority) as it may only be practised by those iwi, hapu or whanau who possess tino rangatiratanga in their rohe. Individuals, and sometimes families and subtribes, are charged with the task of kaitiakitanga. Kaitiaki often receive their mana or authority with respect to a particular locality, place or resource. For example, a family or individual might be the kaitiaki for a pa or for a fishing ground because they possess an intricate knowledge of the local environment. As kaitiaki of their traditional fishing grounds and reefs, iwi and hapu have a responsibility to nurture and safeguard these resources for future benefit.

All those exercising functions, duties and powers under the Resource Management Act are required to have particular regard to kaitiakitanga. However, defining kaitiakitanga is complex and may mean different things to different iwi and hapu.

The views of the tangata whenua of the area in relation to the resource at issue are to be given paramount consideration in determining the nature of the kaitiaki (that is, the form it takes) and what is necessary for protecting or enhancing the relationship of kaitiakitanga (that is, the process) with the resource in the region. It is acknowledged that there will be times when a general consensus on the meaning of kaitiakitanga will be appropriate and also times when consultation will need to occur on a resource and site specific basis.

#### The significant issue in relation to recognising kaitiakitanga is:

**KTA**      **The Taranaki Regional Council and**  
**ISS 1**      **territorial authorities agreeing to a shared**  
                 **understanding with iwi and hapu on the**  
                 **meaning and practical implications of**  
                 **kaitiakitanga in terms of resource**  
                 **management.**

### OBJECTIVE

#### KTA OBJECTIVE 1

***To have particular regard to the concept of kaitiakitanga in relation to managing the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources in the Taranaki region, in a way that accommodates the views of individual iwi and hapu.***

## POLICY

### Kaitiakitanga

#### KTA POLICY 1

*Iwi and hapu will be consulted on an individual basis to determine how kaitiakitanga can be recognised and integrated in the management of the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources in the Taranaki region.*

#### Explanation of the Policy

In having regard to the concept of kaitiakitanga, and recognising the complexities in defining that concept and determining kaitiaki, it is appropriate that consultation be on an individual and resource specific basis with the relevant iwi or hapu group (Policy 1).

#### Related policies

All policies in **Sections 5.1** [Soil erosion]; **Section 5.2** [Soil health]; **Section 5.3** [Hazardous substances and contaminated sites]; **Section 6.1** [Sustainable water allocation]; **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; **Section 6.4** [Wetlands]; **Section 6.5** [Land drainage and associated diversions]; **Section 6.6** [Use of river and lake beds]; **Section 6.7** [Public access to rivers and lakes]; **Section 7.1** [Air quality]; **Section 7.2** [Climate change]; **Section 8.1** [Natural character of the coastal environment]; **Section 8.2** [Coastal water quality]; **Section 8.3** [Public access to the coastal environment]; **Section 10.1** [Natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.2** [Historic heritage]; **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; **Section 14** [Energy]; **Section 16.1** [Treaty of Waitangi]; **Section 16.3** [Ancestral lands]; and **Section 16.4** [Cultural and spiritual values].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

- KTA METH 1** Consult with iwi and hapu on a resource and site specific basis, and develop models in partnership with iwi and hapu with respect to the meaning of kaitiakitanga and the way in which the Taranaki Regional Council could appropriately have regard to this concept and accommodate the role of tribal kaitiaki in the management of natural and physical resources.
- KTA METH 2** Be guided in administering functions, powers and duties under the Act, by the **Declaration of Understanding** and a **Code of Conduct** developed jointly by the Taranaki Regional Council and Iwi o Taranaki.
- KTA METH 3** Consider the development of **memoranda of understanding** with iwi authorities to promote resource management and an

effective relationship between the Taranaki Regional Council and the iwi.

- KTA METH 4** When developing policies and processing resource consents, have regard to **statutory acknowledgements** where the Crown has formally acknowledged the statements made by iwi of the particular cultural, spiritual, historical, and traditional association of the iwi with particular areas.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policy and methods

The objective, policy and methods of implementation give effect to the Resource Management Act and establish a planning framework for recognising kaitiakitanga. They formally recognise the special status of tangata whenua and are statements of the Council's commitment to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi and resources, areas and sites of particular significance to tangata whenua.

The policy and methods build on current approaches to this issue. They have proven to be acceptable to date in terms of promoting effective integrated management and achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs. The policy and methods are in addition to those adopted in Part B [Resource management issues of significance] of the Regional Policy Statement, which relate to managing the wider environment and which also contribute towards kaitiakitanga.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### KTA ER 1

*Resource management decisions reflective of the philosophy of kaitiakitanga.*

## 16.3 RECOGNISING AND PROVIDING FOR THE RELATIONSHIP OF MĀORI WITH ANCESTRAL LANDS, WATER, SITES, WĀHI TAPU AND OTHER TAONGA

#### Background to the issue

Māori perceive natural and physical resources such as land, air, water and the coast as a taonga – an invaluable treasure – which has been gifted by their tipuna (ancestors) for the benefit and use of the descendants. This gift imposes a responsibility on the tangata whenua, as kaitiaki, to ensure that the resource is conserved and handed on to future generations in a similar condition. The Taranaki landscape and coastline is rich in tribal history, which has a present day reality manifested in sites and features of particular significance to tangata whenua.

Te maunga o Taranaki (Mount Taranaki) has particular significance to Iwi o Taranaki.

The close attachment that tangata whenua have to their ancestral lands stems from a belief in a common origin from their original parents Papa-tu-a nuku (Earth mother) and Ranganui (Sky Father) and from ancestral occupation and use. The relationship to the land provides a link with both ancestors and future generations. It confirms tribal and kinship ties and in so doing, establishes a sense of tribal identity and continuity.

Ancestral lands are not restricted to land currently in Māori ownership but may also include lands traditionally occupied by iwi and hapu. In managing the land resources of Taranaki, opportunities must be provided for tangata whenua to use and develop their land in accordance with their culture and traditions, providing for appropriate development of marae, papakainga and whare wānanga on tūrangawaewae and protecting wāhi tapu and other resources and places of cultural values from the adverse effects of land use.

Māori also perceive all things in the natural world as having metaphysical qualities of mauri (essential life force) and wairua (a spiritual dimension). The continued existence of these qualities depends on the physical health of the physical and natural resources and is also linked to the mana of the kaitiaki people. Contamination or degradation of the natural world and resources (e.g. water) has the effect of diminishing its mauri and wairua thereby resulting in a subsequent loss of mana for the kaitiaki.

Water is valued by tangata whenua not only for the provision of physical substances through the gathering of kai (e.g. watercress, tuna (eel), piharau (lamprey), kahawai, inanga and other whitebait species), but also for the tribal mana and standing derived from providing locally obtained food for manuhiri or guests on the marae. Particular rivers and streams also may have special significance to those iwi and hapu in whose rohe they are located. The Tongaporutu and Mohakatino rivers are identified in statutory acknowledgements to be of special cultural, spiritual, historical and traditional association of Ngati Tama. The Tangahoe, Whenuakura and Patea rivers are identified in statutory acknowledgements to be of special cultural, spiritual, historical and traditional association of Ngati Ruanui. Likewise, the Whenuakura River and parts of the Waitotara and Patea rivers are identified in statutory acknowledgements to be of special cultural, spiritual, historical and traditional association of Ngāa Rauru. There are other rivers and streams of significance to iwi. For example, the Stony (Hangatahua) River is of special value for the Taranaki iwi, the Waiwhakaiho

and Waiongana rivers are of special significance to Te Atiawa, the Kapuni Stream is of special value to the Ngā Ruahine, and the Manganui and Waitara rivers are of special value to Ngati Maru.

The air, like all other natural resources is considered by Māori to be a taonga, to be valued, used with respect, and handed on in an equally good condition to the next generation. The emission of contaminants to air may therefore have a spiritual impact associated with the physical effect. Air contaminants may also adversely affect wāhi tapu.

The coastal environment and its resources are of great cultural, spiritual and economic benefit to Iwi o Taranaki. As kaitiaki of their traditional fishing grounds and reefs, iwi and hapu have a responsibility to nurture and safeguard these resources for future benefit. This stewardship ethic is reflected in customary practices and rules such as rotational or seasonal harvesting, collection techniques aimed at preserving the natural state of fishing reefs, the use of rahui (prohibition) on seafood gathered to prevent exploitation, restrictions on gutting and shelling seafood gathering to prevent exploitation, restrictions on gutting and shelling seafood below the high tide mark and the avoidance of contamination of the coastal habitat from human and animal wastes.

Other particular sites of cultural and spiritual significance to iwi include wāhi tapu, urupa (burial sites) and battlegrounds, tauranga waka (ancestral canoe landing and launching sites), taonga raranga (plants valued for weaving eg: pingao and harakeke), toko taunga ika (rocks marking fishing grounds), and landscape features signifying iwi and hapu boundaries. The Taranaki Regional Council and territorial authorities, in giving effect to their resource management responsibilities, will give particular consideration to the special relationship that tangata whenua have with the environment, as expressed through tikanga.

Appendix IV sets out the statutory acknowledgement, formally agreed to between the Crown and relevant iwi authority as part of the Treaty of Waitangi settlement, which identify areas or sites containing cultural, spiritual, historical, and traditional values of significance to the iwi.

**The significant issues in relation to recognising and providing for the relationship of Māori with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga are:**

<b>REL ISS 1</b>	<b>Restoring, maintaining and enhancing the cultural relationship and links of Iwi o Taranaki with their ancestral lands by providing opportunities for tangata whenua to use and develop their land in accordance</b>
----------------------	--

with their culture and traditions.

- REL  
ISS 2 Restoring, maintaining and enhancing the cultural relationship and links of iwi o Taranaki with the water resources of the region.
- REL  
ISS 3 Recognising the air resource as a taonga and protecting wāhi tapu from the intrusion of odour or visual pollutants.
- REL  
ISS 4 Recognising tribal rangatiratanga in the coastal environment, including the role of tangata whenua as kaitiaki of coastal resources and fishing grounds, recognising traditional management practices, protecting mahinga, mātaimai or kaimoana, recognising the impact of coastal discharges on cultural values, and protecting coastal wāhi tapu and other sites and features of cultural significance to Māori in the coastal environment.

## OBJECTIVE

### REL OBJECTIVE 1

*To recognise and provide for the cultural and traditional relationship of Māori with their ancestral lands, water, air, coastal environment, wāhi tapu and other sites and taonga within the Taranaki region.*

## POLICIES

### Land development

#### REL POLICY 1

*The development, use or protection of iwi and hapu land will be supported in a manner, which is consistent with the purpose of the Act.*

### Marae development

#### REL POLICY 2

*The aspirations of iwi and hapu concerning the development of marae, papakainga, kaumatua housing, whare wānanga, water supplies and other facilities on iwi and hapu land will be recognised and supported.*

### Wāhi tapu and adverse effects of resource use

#### REL POLICY 3

*Wāhi tapu and other sites or features of historical or cultural significance to iwi, and hapu and the cultural and spiritual values associated with ancestral lands, fresh water, air and the coast, will be protected from the adverse effects of activities, as far as is practicable and in a manner, which is consistent with the purpose of the Act.*

### Protection of mahinga kai

#### REL POLICY 4

*The protection and enhancement of mahinga kai within the region's water bodies will be provided for and the restoration of degraded water bodies, which are of concern to iwi will be promoted.*

### Natural features and landscapes

#### REL POLICY 5

*The cultural perspectives of iwi in relation to the identification and protection of outstanding natural features and landscapes will be recognised and provided for.*

### Effluent disposal

#### REL POLICY 6

*The development of land-based effluent disposal systems will be promoted and encouraged, where appropriate, in preference to effluent assimilation in water.*

### Protection of water bodies of significance to iwi

#### REL POLICY 7

*The maintenance and enhancement of rivers, streams, lakes and other water bodies, which have special significance to iwi will be provided for in a manner respectful of tikanga Māori.*

### Protection of coastal areas of significance to iwi

#### REL POLICY 8

*The protection of areas or characteristics of the Taranaki coastal environment, which have special significance to iwi will be provided for in a manner respectful of tikanga Māori.*

### Explanation of the policies

Policies 1 and 2 seek to ensure that tangata whenua face no unnecessary barriers in the development of their lands and to provide for the recognition and protection of sites and resources on ancestral lands, which are of cultural value to iwi, from the adverse effects of resource use and development.

Policy 3 recognises that some resources, places or things are of special significance to Māori. These include wāhi tapu sites and may also include archaeological sites, other historic sites or places and natural features and landscapes of cultural or traditional importance to Māori. The intention of the Policy is therefore to protect such sites or features and associated cultural and spiritual values from any adverse effects of activities as far as is practicable.

Policy 4 recognises the cultural significance of mahinga kai (areas from which food resources are gathered or propagated) within rivers and lakes to iwi and hapu and seeks to protect and enhance such

areas. The Policy also aims to promote the restoration of degraded water bodies, which are of concern to iwi.

Many landscapes and natural features have significant cultural value to iwi. Through Policy 5 the identification and protection of these areas will be recognised and provided for.

Policy 6 recognises the particular abhorrence Māori have of effluent disposal to water and states that the development of land-based effluent disposal systems will be promoted and encouraged, where appropriate, in order to protect the mauri or wairua qualities of waterbodies.

Taranaki waterbodies and the coast contain sites, features, qualities and characteristics of special significance to iwi, including mahinga mātaihai, wāhi tapu, tauranga waka, taonga raranga and other taonga. When exercising their functions, powers and duties under the Act, the Taranaki Regional Council and territorial authorities will do so in a manner that is respectful of tikanga Māori (Policies 7 and 8).

#### Related policies

All policies in **Sections 5.1** [Soil erosion]; **Section 5.2** [Soil health]; **Section 5.3** [Hazardous substances and contaminated sites]; **Section 6.1** [Surface water allocation]; **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; **Section 6.3** [Groundwater quantity and quality]; **Section 6.4** [Wetlands]; **Section 6.5** [Land drainage and associated diversions]; **Section 6.6** [Use of river and lake beds]; **Section 6.7** [Public access to rivers and lakes]; **Section 7.1** [Air quality]; **Section 7.2** [Climate change]; **Section 8.1** [Natural character of the coastal environment]; **Section 8.2** [Coastal water quality]; **Section 8.3** [Public access to the coastal environment]; **Section 9** [Indigenous biodiversity]; **Section 10.1** [Natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.2** [Historic heritage]; **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; **Section 14** [Energy]; **Section 15.1** [Sustainable urban development]; **Section 16.1** [Treaty of Waitangi]; **Section 16.2** [Kaitiakitanga], and **Section 16.4** [Cultural and spiritual values].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

**REL METH 1** As appropriate, **implement** those methods as outlined in Part B [Resource management issues of significance] of this Regional Policy Statement in relation to the Taranaki Regional Council's functions and responsibilities regarding the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources.

**REL METH 2** Maintain a **regional plan or plans** with objectives, policies and methods of implementation that will protect wāhi tapu and avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of resource use activities on natural and physical resources of significance to Māori.

**REL METH 3** **Consult** with iwi and hapu with regard to the identification of places of special cultural and traditional value associated with fresh water, river and lake beds and the coastal environment, with the aim of ensuring these values are recognised and provided for in the **resource consents process** and, where appropriate, these places and values are adequately protected from the adverse effects of activities.

**REL METH 4** Encourage iwi and hapu participation in **riparian management**.

**REL METH 5** **Support** and assist iwi as appropriate, with their **identification of wāhi tapu and other taonga** through the development of wāhi tapu inventories, registers or 'silent files'.

**REL METH 6** Provide **advice and information** to generally promote awareness of wāhi tapu and other taonga and the importance and values of such sites and values.

**REL METH 7** **Notify** affected iwi of all notified resource consent applications and **consult** relevant iwi and hapu when they have concerns about the effects of activities on wāhi tapu and other taonga.

**REL METH 8** Have regard to **statutory acknowledgements**, take into account **any relevant planning document recognised by an iwi authority and lodged with the Council** and recognise and provide for **foreshore and seabed reserve management plans** in preparing regional policies and plans.

**REL METH 9** **Protect** sensitive information about the location and nature of wāhi tapu in the **consent and hearing process** through public exclusion and restrictions on the release of this information.

Territorial authorities may wish to consider the following methods:

**REL METH 10** Include in **district plans**, provisions for the development of marae, papakainga, kaumatua housing, whare wānanga and



other facilities on iwi and hapu land.

- REL METH 11** Include in **district plans** and conditions of **resource consents**, provisions for the protection of wāhi tapu, natural features and landscapes, and other places of cultural significance from the adverse effects of land use activities.
- REL METH 12** **Support** applications by iwi authorities to become **heritage protection authorities** for the purpose of protecting wāhi tapu or other sites of cultural or historical significance.
- REL METH 13** At the request of an iwi authority, consider the option of the territorial authority becoming a **Heritage Protection Authority** for the purpose of protecting wāhi tapu in its district.
- REL METH 14** **Recognise and provide** for the cultural and spiritual significance of water to iwi in the preparation and implementation of district plans and in the processing and administration of resource consents.
- REL METH 15** **Encourage** landowners to protect wāhi tapu on their properties through voluntary agreements or covenants.
- REL METH 16** **Protect** sensitive information about the location and nature of wāhi tapu in the **consent and hearing process** through public exclusion and restrictions on the release of this information.

#### Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods

The objective, policies and methods of implementation give effect to the requirements of the Resource Management Act. In particular, they establish a planning framework to address a matter of national importance under the Resource Management Act – namely recognition and provision for the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga (section 6(e)). The Taranaki Regional Council and territorial authorities must also have particular regard to kaitiakitanga (section 7(a)) and the ethic of stewardship (section 6(aa)); and take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (section 8).

The policies and methods build on current approaches to this issue. They have proven to be acceptable to date in terms of promoting effective integrated management and achieving desired environmental outcomes and are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs. The policies and methods are in

addition to those adopted in Part B [Resource management issues of significance] of the Regional Policy Statement, which relate to managing the wider environment and which also contribute towards recognition and provision for the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga.

#### Environmental results anticipated

##### REL ER 1

*Maintenance and enhancement of the relationship of Iwi o Taranaki with water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga.*

##### REL ER 2

*Protection of wāhi tapu and other sites and resources of cultural significance from the adverse effects associated with the use and development of natural and physical resources.*

## 16.4 RECOGNISING CULTURAL AND SPIRITUAL VALUES OF TANGATA WHENUA IN RESOURCE MANAGEMENT PROCESSES

### Background to the issue

The environmental management system of tangata whenua in Taranaki was developed over many centuries and has been exercised by numerous generations. It is still practised today and is recognised in the Treaty of Waitangi. Of fundamental significance to this management philosophy is the Māori perception of the natural world and its origins. Māori view themselves as an integral part of the natural world. The spiritual beliefs held by Māori link the tangata whenua to their original parents Papa-tu-a-nuku (Earth mother) and Ranganui (Sky father) as part of a complete living system.

Māori consider all things in the natural world to have mauri (life force) and wairua (a spiritual dimension). Respect for the spiritual integrity of the environment and the atua (god) that created it will ensure that the taonga can be protected and passed on to succeeding generations.

Tangata whenua authority to care for taonga is based on kaitiakitanga (guardianship), which is derived from mana (absolute authority and legitimacy) and expressed through tikanga (customs and values). Tikanga includes concepts such as tapu (sacredness) and noa (non-tapu), ihi (awesome power), and wehi (reverence). It also includes customary practices and rules such as rotational or seasonal harvesting and collection techniques aimed at preserving the natural state of fishing reefs, the use of rahui (prohibition) on seafood gathering to prevent exploitation, restrictions on gutting and shelling seafood below the high tide

mark and the avoidance of contamination of the coastal habitat from human and animal wastes. Tikanga has been developed over time to maintain the mauri and sustainability of the domains of atua.

The Taranaki Regional Council and territorial authorities, in giving effect to its resource management responsibilities, must take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (section 16.1 above), have particular regard to kaitiakitanga (section 16.2 above), and recognise and provide for the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga (section 16.3 above).

**The significant issue in relation to taking into account Māori cultural and spiritual values in resource management processes is:**

**CSV  
ISS 1** To adopt resource management processes that give particular consideration to the relationship that tangata whenua have with the environment and which accommodate the cultural and spiritual values of Iwi o Taranaki.

## OBJECTIVE

### CSV OBJECTIVE 1

*Management of natural and physical resources in the Taranaki region will be carried out in a manner that takes into account the cultural and spiritual values of Iwi o Taranaki and in a manner which respects and accommodates tikanga Māori.*

## POLICIES

### Cultural and spiritual values

#### CSV POLICY 1

*The special relationship that Taranaki tangata whenua have with te taiao (the environment), as reflected in their respect for the spiritual integrity of te taiao as a living system infused with qualities of wairua (spirituality), mauri (life principle), wehi (reverence), mana (authority), tapu (sacredness) and noa (non-tapu), will be given particular consideration in the promotion of the sustainable management of the region's resources.*

### Partnership in resource management

#### CSV POLICY 2

*Procedures and approaches will be adopted to enable iwi to participate as a partner in water, air and coastal management decision-making.*

### Recognition of tikanga Māori and tribal rangatiratanga

#### CSV POLICY 3

*Procedures will be adopted, which seek to recognise and accommodate tikanga Māori and the*

*rangatiratanga rights of iwi and hapu over their mahinga mātaītai and other taonga in the environment and their role as kaitiaki, within resource management processes.*

### Explanation of the policies

Policy 1 recognises the special relationship that tangata whenua have with the environment. The Taranaki Regional Council and district councils in giving effect to their resource management responsibilities will give particular consideration to this relationship to ensure that tangata whenua face no unnecessary barriers in participating in resource management processes.

Policy 2 recognises the special partnership relationship between iwi and the Crown as a principle of the Treaty of Waitangi and refers to the establishment of procedures to encourage active participation of iwi in resource management decision making.

Policy 3 has been adopted in accordance with the Treaty of Waitangi principle of rangatiratanga, which recognises the right of individual iwi to define their own cultural perspectives and resource management preferences within their rohe and their responsibilities to safeguard tribal resources. The Policy also seeks to recognise and accommodate tikanga Māori as part of the Taranaki Regional Council's management of natural and physical resources.

### Related policies

All policies in **Sections 5.1** [Soil erosion]; **Section 5.2** [Soil health]; **Section 5.3** [Hazardous substances and contaminated sites]; **Section 6.1** [Sustainable water allocation]; **Section 6.2** [Surface water quality]; **Section 6.4** [Wetlands]; **Section 6.5** [Land drainage and associated diversions]; **Section 6.6** [Use of river and lake beds]; **Section 6.7** [Public access to rivers and lakes]; **Section 7.1** [Air quality]; **Section 7.2** [Climate change]; **Section 8.1** [Natural character of the coastal environment]; **Section 8.2** [Coastal water quality]; **Section 8.3** [Public access to the coastal environment]; **Section 9** [Indigenous biodiversity]; **Section 10.1** [Natural features and landscapes]; **Section 10.2** [Historic heritage]; **Section 10.3** [Amenity values]; **Section 13** [Minerals]; **Section 14** [Energy]; **Section 16.1** [Treaty of Waitangi], **Section 16.2** [Kaitiakitanga], and **Section 16.3** [Ancestral lands].

## METHODS OF IMPLEMENTATION

The Taranaki Regional Council will:

**CSV  
METH 1** Provide for the views of tangata whenua to be represented in the development of policies and plans, as appropriate, by:  
(a) **consulting** with iwi and hapu in the

	development of policy and regional plans;		
	(b) providing tangata whenua with sufficient <b>information</b> , as may be appropriate and within the constraints of the Resource Management Act, to make informed decisions and provide representative views;		
	(c) <b>contracting</b> as appropriate, representatives of iwi and hapu to supply information, provide representative views, act as facilitators, and undertake research work or specific projects for policy and plan preparation;		
	(d) providing <b>technical, administrative and other support</b> to assist the understanding and participation of iwi and hapu in resource management; and		
	(e) holding <b>hui</b> and other meetings with iwi and hapu.		
<b>CSV METH 2</b>	Provide iwi and hapu with full opportunity to participate in the <b>resource consents process</b> , as appropriate, by:		
	(a) notifying, and consulting with affected iwi and hapu on notified resource consent applications which are site or resource specific;		
	(b) arranging and facilitating meetings between resource consent applicants and members of affected iwi and hapu;		
	(c) providing information and technical advice to members of affected iwi and hapu to assist with the preparation of submissions when required; and		
	(d) extending processing periods when necessary and within statutory constraints, to enable adequate consultation and possible resolution of issues.		
<b>CSV METH 3</b>	Provide for tikanga Māori to be recognised in the <b>hearing process</b> by:		
	1. arranging interpretation services for the presentation of evidence in Māori;		
	2. holding pre-hearing meetings and hearings on marae as may be appropriate, at the request of affected iwi and hapu; and		
	3. excluding the public from a hearing and restricting the publication of evidence when this is necessary to avoid offence to tikanga Māori and the disclosure of the location of wāhi tapu.		
<b>CSV METH 4</b>	Encourage iwi participation and support in <b>environmental monitoring</b> , including input into the design of monitoring programmes and involvement in monitoring activities,		
			when appropriate.
<b>CSV METH 5</b>			Support iwi initiatives to prepare <b>iwi planning documents</b> by providing planning assistance and reasonable clerical support where required, and by facilitating funding options on a case-by-case basis.
<b>CSV METH 6</b>			Consider opportunities for:
		(a) <b>transfer of functions</b> to Te Putahitanga o Taranaki or similar standing committee of the Council; and	
		(b) the <b>delegation of powers or joint management agreements</b> to iwi authorities;	
		– providing they meet the required conditions of representing the community of interest, efficiency and use of expertise and fulfil the necessary reporting and accountability procedures that would need to be established.	
<b>CSV METH 7</b>			Consider opportunities for using <b>methods of resource management and monitoring that recognise traditional cultural and spiritual values of tangata whenua</b> as an alternative or additional means of achieving sustainable management or protecting taonga.
<b>CSV METH 8</b>			Consider the development of <b>memoranda of understanding</b> with iwi authorities to promote resource management and an effective relationship between the Taranaki Regional Council and iwi.
<b>CSV METH 9</b>			When developing policies and processing resource consents, have regard to <b>statutory acknowledgements</b> where the Crown has formally acknowledged the statements made by iwi of the particular cultural, spiritual, historical, and traditional association of iwi with particular areas.
<b>CSV METH 10</b>			Continue to be guided in administering functions, powers and duties pursuant to the Act, by the <b>Declaration of Understanding</b> and the <b>Code of Conduct</b> developed jointly by the Taranaki Regional Council and Iwi o Taranaki.
			<b>Principal reasons for adopting the objective, policies and methods</b>
			The objective, policies and methods of implementation give effect to the requirements of the Resource Management Act. In particular, they establish a planning framework that further addresses a matter of

national importance under the Resource Management Act – namely recognition and provision for the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga (section 6(e)). The Taranaki Regional Council and territorial authorities must also have particular regard to kaitiakitanga (section 7(a)) and the ethic of stewardship (section 7(aa)); and take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (section 8).

The policies and methods build on current approaches to this issue. The policies and methods are considered appropriate having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness and their benefits and costs. They also reaffirm the importance of regional plans in terms of setting the resource consenting framework and the importance of consultation with iwi during their preparation.

Of note has been the significant role of Te Putahitanga o Taranaki – the Taranaki Regional Council's Māori liaison committee – in establishing Council's policies on the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi and on resource management issues of significant to iwi. Te Putahi, which was established in the early years after the Council's formation, acted as a pan iwi forum for discussion and was a source of advice to the Council on issues of interest or concern to Māori.

Due to the efforts of Te Putahitanga o Taranaki, policies and plans are now firmly in place and continue to guide the Taranaki Regional Council in its activities. However, there have been issues with rights of representation on Te Putahi, which remain unresolved. As a consequence, Te Putahi has been inactive in recent years. A review of the role of the committee initiated by iwi, has not been completed. Until such time as there is greater clarity on its future role, Te Putahi will continue as a non-active Standing Committee of the Taranaki Regional Council. In the meantime, the Council will continue to implement the policies and methods outlined in this section and seek to maintain effective working relationships with individual iwi and hapu in its day-to-day activities.

#### **Environmental results anticipated**

##### **CSV ER 1**

*Maintenance and enhancement of the relationship of Iwi o Taranaki with water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga.*

##### **CSV ER 2**

*Environmental outcomes which accommodate the cultural and spiritual values of tangata whenua.*

### Ngati Ruanui participation in monitoring

The Taranaki coastline has special significance to Māori. This has been demonstrated by the interest of many Iwi and hapu in resource consent processing and monitoring undertaken by the Taranaki Regional Council. One example of that interest is Ngati Ruanui participation in marine ecological monitoring associated with the Fonterra Whareroa marine outfall.

In 1999, after discussions between the Council and Te Ruananga O Ngati Ruanui, representatives of the Ruananga were invited to participate in the programme to monitor the effects of the discharge from the Fonterra Whareroa marine outfall on the coast. Since that time, Ruananga representatives have assisted the Council in seven marine ecological surveys.

The marine survey work at Whareroa involves a member of Te Ruananga O Ngati Ruanui being trained and assisting a Council officer in carrying out the survey work. The cost of this work is met by Fonterra and the Council.

Ngati Ruanui participation in the surveys has been beneficial to all parties involved. From the Council's perspective, there is an opportunity to get a special insight and obtain a better understanding of the cultural and historical significance of that part of the coast to Iwi. There is also an opportunity for the Council to explain why the monitoring is undertaken and the methods adopted.

From Ngati Ruanui's perspective and as noted in the report prepared by Rukutai Watene to the Ngati Ruanui Group Management Ltd, the cultural and historical information from Māori and scientific information by the Council "...work[ed] very well together and now the relationship has been made by the two parties it needs to be encouraged for future projects that may arise in years to come."





## **Part D**

### **Administrative procedures**





## 17. Administrative procedures

The Resource Management Act requires that a Regional Policy Statement state:

- (a) the processes to be used to deal with issues that cross local authority boundaries, and issues between territorial authorities or between regions (section 62(1)(h) of the Act)
- (b) the procedures to be used to monitor the efficiency and effectiveness of the policies or the methods contained in the Regional Policy Statement (section 62(1)(j) of the Act)
- (c) any other information required for the purpose of the Taranaki Regional Council's functions, powers and duties under the Act (section 62(1)(k) of the Act).

Part D of the Regional Policy Statement covers these matters and other related administrative procedures.

### 17.1 INTEGRATED MANAGEMENT AND CROSS BOUNDARY PROCESSES

Integrated management involves a consideration of:

- (a) the effects of the use of one natural resource on other natural and physical resources or on other parts of the environment recognising that such effects may occur across space and time
- (b) the functions of other agencies with roles and responsibilities that contribute towards or impact on resource management
- (c) the social and economic objectives and interests of the community, recognising that natural and physical resources cannot be managed without having regard to social, economic and cultural matters.

Cross boundary issues may occur when environmental effects of one resource use are felt in another part of the environment (e.g. water quality affected as a result of the discharge of contaminants to land). The aim of integrated management is to promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources in an efficient and effective manner by implementing and promoting complementary, efficient and effective management of all natural and physical resources.

The policies and methods of implementation as outlined in Part B [Resource management issues of significance] and Part C of the Regional Policy Statement [Resource management issues of significance to iwi] contribute to the integrated management of natural and physical resources in the Taranaki region. In addition to those policies and methods, the Taranaki Regional Council will use the

following procedures to promote integrated management and address cross-boundary issues:

- **Liase**, as appropriate, with Central Government agencies in relation to resource management issues of regional significance.
- **Advocate** to Central Government, the use, when appropriate, of national policy statements, call-in powers or national environmental standards, when issues that cross local authority boundaries are of national significance.
- Make **submissions**, as appropriate, on documents prepared by Central Government agencies regarding issues of national significance that impact or impinge on the Taranaki Regional Council's resource management functions under the Resource Management Act.
- **Liase**, as appropriate, with the Waikato Regional Council and the Manawatu-Wanganui Regional Council on resource management matters that are relevant to more than one region.
- **Have regard** to any **policy statements and plans** (including resource management plans, strategic plans and annual plans) prepared by the Taranaki Regional Council, its neighbouring regional councils and territorial authorities (including those prepared under other legislation e.g. the Biosecurity Act, Civil Defence Emergency Management Act and the Land Transport Management Act) and the extent to which this Statement needs to be consistent with those documents.
- **Consult** adjoining local authorities in the preparation of regional and district plans to ensure a consistent approach between districts and between the regions and districts regarding issues which cross local authority boundaries and state in those plans the processes for dealing with those issues.
- Consider the objectives, and policies contained in the *Regional Policy Statement for Taranaki*, in the preparation of the **Long Term Council Community Plan** and **annual plans** under the Local Government Act 2004.
- Make **submissions**, as required, to policies, plans, strategies or other proposals of local government or other agencies, and liaise with and consult these agencies regarding the objectives and policies contained in the *Regional Policy Statement for Taranaki*.
- **Liase**, as appropriate, with the New Plymouth District Council, Stratford District Council and South Taranaki District Council on cross-boundary

issues relating to land use, waste management, the control of domestic wastewater systems, stormwater and drainage, the use of river and lake beds, odour, the coast, indigenous biodiversity, hazardous substances, natural hazards, sustainable energy, natural features, landscapes and amenities, historic heritage, the built environment and other issues as may be agreed.

- Develop and maintain, as appropriate, **protocols, memoranda of understanding, and other agreements** where management responsibilities potentially overlap, or in order to promote more effective integrated resource management.
- **Advocate** to the New Plymouth District Council, Stratford District Council and South Taranaki District Council that, where appropriate, provisions are included in district plans that avoid unnecessary duplication of resource management responsibilities.
- Achieve **consistency** within regional planning documents on what constitutes the **natural character of the coastal environment** and seek **consistency** with territorial authorities in defining the effects that land based activities and subdivision may have in the **coastal marine area** and ensure that district plan provisions, particularly those that apply to the coastal environment, are not inconsistent with the objectives, policies and methods in the *Regional Coastal Plan for Taranaki*.
- Work with the Ministry of Fisheries and the Department of Conservation with respect to managing the coastal environment.
- Seek **consistency** with territorial authorities in defining the 'natural character' of the coastal environment as it applies in particular to the land boundary of the coastal environment.
- Consider the **transfer of functions** that other agencies could carry out more efficiently, effectively and appropriately. Transfers of functions will be considered based on the requirements of section 33 of the Resource Management Act, including where both authorities agree that the authority to which the transfer is made represents the appropriate community of interest, and where the transfer is desirable on the grounds of efficiency and technical or special capability or expertise.
- When appropriate, establish **joint approaches** to the resolution of resource management issues, including the establishment of joint working parties, joint management agreements, research projects, and investigations and monitoring programmes, particularly when issues are of

regional significance, or when issues cross local authority boundaries.

- Establish appropriate **protocols** for the efficient and effective operation of joint hearings.
- Give full **consideration** to the effects on all other aspects of the environment in the development of strategies and plans, in the consideration of resource consent applications, and in the provision of advice.
- When considering an application for resource consent, **consider all issues in the balance** with other policies set out in the Regional Policy Statement.
- **Consider**, in preparing regional plans and in processing resource consents, the actual or potential effects of activities over variable **time scales**, including the effects of climate change.
- **Consider** the degree to which **financial contributions** associated with a consent application to subdivide, use or develop the coastal marine area can be used to offset any unavoidable adverse effects in the coastal environment.
- **Liase**, as appropriate, with industry when developments beyond the 12 nautical mile seaward boundary of the region may have impacts within the coastal marine area.
- **Consult** adjacent authorities when the effects of an activity for which a resource consent application is made cross district or regional boundaries.
- Provide resource consent applicants with **information or advice** relating to activities that require consent from more than one agency.
- Promote methods through which resource consents required for the component parts of an activity may be dealt with within a **single consent process** by the Taranaki Regional Council and the territorial authorities including joint and combined hearings.
- When appropriate, **coordinate environmental assessments** and the gathering of the **information** required to be submitted with applications for resource consents from the Taranaki Regional Council and the territorial authorities.
- Encourage and facilitate, when appropriate, the development of **joint databases and information systems** and make available and exchange technical information and advice.
- Consider the development of **memoranda of understanding** with iwi authorities to promote resource management and an effective

relationship between the Taranaki Regional Council and iwi.

- **Liase**, as appropriate, with the Department of Conservation, Fish and Game New Zealand, other government and non-government organisations, and iwi and hapu of Taranaki on resource management matters.
- **Liase** and maintain linkages with the appropriate public health authorities regarding public health issues that arise in carrying out resource management functions under the Act.
- Consider the desirability of coordinating or jointly undertaking **resource management education programmes**.
- Gather and provide **information or guidelines** to resource users and managers and the public on how to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of activities on the environment.
- Generally **advocate** the objectives and policies contained within the Regional Policy Statement and **encourage awareness** and understanding of them within the community.

## 17.2 MONITORING

The Taranaki Regional Council is required under sections 35(2) of the Resource Management Act to monitor the efficiency and effectiveness of policies and methods in this Statement and is further required under section 62(1)(j) of the Act to state in the Regional Policy Statement what procedures will be used to monitor the efficiency and effectiveness of the policies and methods in the Statement.

The following procedures will be used to monitor the efficiency and effectiveness of this Statement:

- (a) Implement and report on the **State of the Environment Monitoring Programme**, which includes:
- monitoring environmental conditions, trends and changes relating to land, water, air and coastal resources in a manner that is integrated with the issues, objectives, policies and methods of this Statement
  - as appropriate, supporting or commissioning research to gather additional information on environmental conditions and pressures
  - utilise information maintained on the Council's databases relating to land, water, air and coastal resource use and management practices
  - utilise monitoring and research programmes carried out by other agencies where appropriate.

- (b) Monitor compliance with resource consents through **resource consents compliance monitoring programmes**.
- (c) Monitor **administrative processes** and trends as a measure of the efficiency and effectiveness of the Regional Policy Statement including:
- through annual significant activity reports, the Council's performance and achievements in relation to its functions
  - the number of resource consents processed, the time required for processing and the efficiency and effectiveness of administrative procedures
  - the number, frequency and type of unauthorised incidents reported, abatement notices issued and follow-up enforcement actions undertaken
  - the inspections and observations of field staff
  - the number and type of submissions made to district council plan reviews and changes and resource consents processed by district councils.
- (d) Through the review process for regional plans, monitor the **efficiency and effectiveness of regional plans** as a means of achieving the objectives and policies of the Regional Policy Statement.
- (e) Request **territorial authorities to assess** and report, as appropriate, on the efficiency and effectiveness of their district plans as a means of achieving the objectives and policies of the Regional Policy Statement, and pay particular attention to those provisions which relate to shared functions and responsibilities such as the avoidance and mitigation of natural hazards and the prevention or mitigation of any adverse effects of the storage, use, disposal or transportation of hazardous substances and the maintenance of indigenous biodiversity.
- (f) Through the **review process for this Regional Policy Statement**, gather and analyse information from the Council's monitoring strategies, programmes and procedures and prepare at five and ten-year intervals, reports on the achievement of objectives and policies contained in the Regional Policy Statement and the degree to which the methods listed in the Statement have been implemented.
- (g) Monitor and record **feedback** received through the media, correspondence, meetings or other means, from resource users, the public or other interested or affected parties, concerning the efficiency and effectiveness of the Regional Policy Statement, and include such responses in the Council's reporting procedures.

- (h) Utilise **monitoring, research programmes and other information** (including requests and complaints) provided by other agencies where appropriate.
- (i) Utilise **information** (including requests and complaints) from iwi, territorial local authorities, other government and non-government agencies and the public where appropriate, e.g. changes in the Department of Conservation estates, approval of Queen Elizabeth II National Trust covenants to protect indigenous habitat and relevant district council land use consent information.

#### State of the environment monitoring

Each year, the Taranaki Regional Council undertakes comprehensive state of the environment monitoring.

In 2007/2008, for example, state of the environment monitoring involved 19 individual monitoring programmes, and over 921 inspections, sampling runs and surveys at 264 monitoring sites covering surface fresh water quantity, levels and flows, fresh water quality, groundwater quantity and quality, coastal waters, biodiversity, air quality and land use sustainability. In addition, the Council continued to maintain and develop its databases and undertook a number of special 'one-off' investigations and applied research to obtain further information on specific issues.

Through good information the community has the ability to make well-informed decisions about the sort of place we want Taranaki to be and the sort of place we want to live in. It is also an essential part of determining the effectiveness of policies and methods and whether environmental outcomes sought are being achieved.

The last state of the environment report prepared by the Council – *Taranaki, Where we Stand* (2009) – noted that overall environment quality in Taranaki is high and has been maintained or improved over time. However, as noted in the report “... *Taranaki’s clean, green image must never be taken for granted. This report does raise concerns regarding the effects of continuing intensification of our dairying industry, soil compaction, modification of stream and wetland habitats... and nutrient runoff from pasture with effects on water quality in the lower reaches of our rivers and streams.*” However, the report goes on to note that “*the Council is greatly heartened by the extent to which the Taranaki community has moved to embrace environmental stewardship and the concept of sustainability*” and that this bodes well for the future.



- (j) Gather **information from iwi and hapū** to determine, the efficiency and effectiveness of the Regional Policy Statement in addressing Māori cultural and spiritual values relevant to resource management matters.

The details of the Taranaki Regional Council’s state of the environment and compliance monitoring programmes are set out in *State of the Environment Monitoring Procedures* and other related documents.

### 17.3 REVIEW OF THE REGIONAL POLICY STATEMENT

The Resource Management Act requires that the Taranaki Regional Council commence a fully review of this Regional Policy Statement no later than 10 years from the date upon which it becomes operative. That review will include a review of the Statement and all changes to the Statement.

The Taranaki Regional Council will also undertake an interim review no later than five years from the date that this Regional Policy Statement becomes operative. This interim review will determine whether assumptions made in this Statement, and the overall direction taken in this Statement, continue to be relevant.

The following procedures will be used to review this Regional Policy Statement:

- (a) A **review** of the relevant parts or provisions of this Statement may be carried out if a **new issue** arises, or if regional monitoring or research programmes show that a review would otherwise be appropriate.
- (b) An **interim review** of the Statement will be commenced no later than five years after the date on which this Statement becomes operative.
- (c) A **full review** (within the meaning of section 79 of the Resource Management Act) will be commenced no later than 10 years after the date on which this Statement becomes operative.

The procedures to be used to review the Regional Policy Statement (within the meaning of section 79 of the Resource Management Act) will be determined at the time of the review, and will include (as part of a review programme) but not be restricted to:

1. An assessment of the state of those matters that will be the subject of monitoring in the *State of the Environment Monitoring Programme*, and comparison with the relevant objectives of the Statement.

2. An internal assessment by officers of the Taranaki Regional Council regarding the efficiency and effectiveness of policies and methods of implementation in achieving the objectives and environmental outcomes identified in the Statement.
3. Internal assessment by officers of the Taranaki Regional Council regarding the usefulness of the matters required to be included in an application for a resource consent and of administrative procedures.
4. Formal and informal liaison with public authorities and other key stakeholders and interest groups regarding the efficiency and effectiveness of the Statement.
5. Analysis and appropriate incorporation of public submissions regarding proposed changes to the Regional Policy Statement as required by section 79 of the Act.



## Glossary of terms

---

This part of the Regional Policy Statement provides the meanings of words used in the Statement. Where a word is followed by an asterisk '\*', the meaning that follows is the meaning provided in section 2 [Interpretation] of the Resource Management Act. In the case of any inconsistency, the statutory definition prevails. Where a word is followed by a double asterisk '\*\*' the meaning that follows is the meaning already adopted in one or more of the regional plans for Taranaki. Other sources, where used, are indicated accordingly.

**Accelerated erosion\*\*** means intensification of the rate of erosion of the land surface (including soil, regolith and bedrock), induced by human activity.

**Access strip\*** means a strip of land created by the registration of an easement in accordance with section 237B for the purpose of allowing public access to or along any river, or lake, or the coast, or to any esplanade reserve, esplanade strip, other reserve, or land owned by the local authority or by the Crown (but excluding all land held for a public work except land held, administered, or managed under the Conservation Act 1987 and the Acts named in Schedule 1 of the Act).

**Act** means the Resource Management Act 1991.

**Advocate** means to suggest, promote or recommend a course of action to implement the objectives and policies of the Regional Policy Statement in order to achieve the purpose of the Act.

**Agrichemical** means any substance whether inorganic or organic, human-made or naturally occurring, modified or in its original state that is used on production land or within public amenity areas including parks, reserves, pedestrian walkways, beaches and foreshore areas, road and rail verges or on, over or into water, to eradicate, modify or control flora or fauna. For the purposes of this Regional Policy Statement, agrichemicals do not include fertilisers, controlled substances and oral nutrition compounds.

**Agricultural compound** as defined in the Agricultural Compounds and Veterinary Medicines Act 1997 means (a) any substance, mixture of substances or biological compound used or intended for use in the direct management of plants and animals, or to be applied to the land, place, or water on or in which the plants and animals are managed, for the purposes of -

- (i) managing or eradicating pests, including vertebrate pests or
- (ii) maintaining, promoting, or regulating plant or animal productivity and performance or reproduction or
- (iii) fulfilling nutritional requirements or
- (iv) the manipulation, capture or immobilisation of animals or
- (v) diagnosing the condition of animals or
- (vi) preventing or treating conditions of animals or
- (vii) enhancing the effectiveness of an agricultural compound used for the treatment of plants and animals or
- (viii) marking animals and

(b) includes -

- (i) any veterinary medicine, substance, mixture of substances or biological compound used for post-harvest treatment of raw primary produce and
- (ii) anything used or intended to be used as feed for animals and
- (iii) any substance, mixture of substances or biological compound declared to be an agricultural compound for the purposes of this Act by Order in Council made under subsection (2).

**Air** means the mixture of gases enveloping the earth and forming the atmosphere.

**Archaeological site** means any place in New Zealand that:

- a) either
  - i. was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900; or
  - ii. is the site of the wreck of any vessel where that wreck occurred before 1900; and
- b) is or may be able through investigation by archaeological methods to provide evidence relating to the history of New Zealand.

**As appropriate, as may be appropriate, when appropriate, where appropriate**, mean that which is or may be appropriate as determined or resolved by the Taranaki Regional Council or relevant territorial authority or their officers acting under delegated authority under Section 34 of the Act.

**Atmosphere** means the air or mixture of gases which envelops the earth and comprises various layers representing changes in temperature, composition and electrical nature.

**Amenity values\*** means those natural or physical qualities and characteristics of an area that contribute to people's appreciation of its pleasantness, aesthetic coherence, and cultural and recreational attributes.

**Bed\*** means –

- (a) in relation to any river –
  - (i) for the purposes of esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, and subdivision, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its annual fullest flow without overtopping its banks;
  - (ii) in all other cases, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its fullest flow without overtopping its banks;
- (b) in relation to any lake, except a lake controlled by artificial means –
  - (i) for the purposes of esplanade reserve, esplanade strips, and subdivision, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its annual highest level without exceeding its margin;
  - (ii) in all other cases, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its highest level without exceeding its margin;
- (c) in relation to any lake controlled by artificial means, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its maximum permitted operating level; and
- (d) in relation to the sea, the submarine areas covered by the internal waters and the territorial sea.

**Benefits and costs\*** includes benefits and costs of any kind, whether monetary or non-monetary.

**Best practicable option\*** in relation to a discharge of a contaminant or an emission of noise, means the best method for preventing or minimising the adverse effects on the environment having regard, among other things, to

- (a) the nature of the discharge or emission and the sensitivity of the receiving environment to adverse effects; and
- (b) the financial implications, and the effects on the environment, of that option when compared with other options; and
- (c) the current state of technical knowledge and the likelihood that the option can be successfully applied.

**Biological diversity (or biodiversity)\*** means the variability among living organisms, and the ecological complexes of which they are a part; including diversity within species, between species, and of ecosystems.

**Coastal environment<sup>9</sup>** means an environment in which the coast is a significant part or element and includes all the coastal marine area.

**Coastal marine area\*** means the foreshore, seabed, and coastal water and the air space above the water –

- (a) of which the seaward boundary is the outer limits of the territorial sea;
- (b) of which the landward boundary is the line of mean high water springs, except that where that line crosses a river, the landward boundary at that point shall be whichever is the lesser of
  - (i) one kilometre upstream from the mouth of the river; or
  - (ii) the point upstream that is calculated by multiplying the width of the river mouth by five.

**Coastal water\*** means seawater within the outer limits of the territorial sea and includes -

- (a) seawater with a substantial freshwater component and
- (b) seawater in estuaries, fiords, inlets, harbours or embayments.

**Co-disposal** means the landfill disposal of appropriate hazardous waste substances by mixing them, in an informed and predetermined manner, with municipal refuse, so as to use the attenuation and biochemical processes operating within the landfill to reduce the environmental effects of those hazardous substances to an insignificant level.

**Community** means a social group of any size, in a particular locality, who share common interests. A community includes a number of different groups around the region, including for example schools and other institutions.

---

<sup>9</sup> Based on a discussion in the Report and recommendations of the board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement, Department of Conservation (1994), Wellington.



**Contaminant\*** includes any substance (including gases, odorous compounds, liquids, solids, and micro-organisms) or energy (excluding noise) or heat, that either by itself or in combination with the same, similar, or other substances, energy, or heat –

- (a) when discharged into water, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical or biological condition of water; or
- (b) when discharged onto or into air, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of the land or air onto or into which it is discharged.

**Controlled substances** means substances that require a controlled substances licence to use under the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act and includes vertebrate toxic agents or vertebrate pest control products and some fumigants.

**Cultural values** are those values that relate to the culture of a society.

**Dam** means an artificial barrier and its appurtenant structures that is constructed to hold back water and is used for the storage, control, taking, diversion or use of water.

**Discharge\*** includes emit, deposit and allow to escape.

**District plan\*** means an operative plan approved by a territorial authority under Schedule 1, and includes all operative changes to such a plan (whether arising from a review or otherwise).

**District rule\*** means a rule made as part of a district plan or proposed district plan in accordance with section 76 and 77A (of the Act).

**Ecosystem<sup>10</sup>** means a dynamic complex of plant, animal and micro-organism communities and their non-living environment interacting as a functional unit.

**Effect\*** ... unless the context (of the Act) otherwise requires, the term 'effect' includes –

- (a) any positive or adverse effect; and
- (b) any temporary or permanent effect; and
- (c) any past, present, or future effect; and
- (d) any cumulative effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects – regardless of the scale, intensity, duration, or frequency of the effect, and also includes –
- (e) any potential effect of high probability; and
- (f) any potential effect of low probability which has a high potential impact.

**Energy** is the capacity of a body or a system to do work.

**Energy efficiency** means the process of seeking to maximise the level of output from the input of energy into an energy conversion process and may include decreasing the level of energy services used.

**Environment\*** includes –

- (a) ecosystems and their constituent parts, including people and communities; and
- (b) all natural and physical resources; and
- (c) amenity values; and
- (d) the social, economic, aesthetic, and cultural conditions which affect the matters stated in (a) to (c) of this definition or which are affected by those matters.

**Environmental results anticipated** means the expected or foreseen result or outcome on the environment as a consequence of implementing the policy or policies and methods of implementation. The environmental results anticipated provide a means of assessing the success of the objectives, policies and methods but may not always be measurable or achievable within the operative life of the Regional Policy Statement.

**Erosion\*\*** means the natural (geological) processes of the wearing away of the land surface (including soil, regolith or bedrock) by natural agents and the transport of the derived material. Erosion includes sheet, wind, creep, slump, flow, rill, gully, tunnel gully and stream erosion.

---

<sup>10</sup> *United Nations Convention on Biological Diversity, (1992).*

**Esplanade reserve\*** means a reserve within the meaning of the Reserves Act 1977 –

- (a) which is either –
  - (i) a local purpose reserve within the meaning of Section 23 of that Act, if vested in the territorial authority under Section 239; or
  - (ii) a reserve vested in the Crown or a regional council under Section 237D; and
- (b) which is vested in the territorial authority, regional council, or the Crown for a purpose or purposes set out in Section 229.

**Esplanade strip\*** means a strip of land created by the registration of an instrument in accordance with Section 232 for a purpose or purposes set out in Section 229.

**Foreshore\*** means any land covered and uncovered by the flow and ebb of the tide at mean spring tides and, in relation to any such land that forms part of the bed of a river, does not include any area that is not part of the coastal marine area.

**Fresh water\*** means all water except coastal water and geothermal water.

**Greenhouse gas\*** has the meaning given to it in section 4(1) of the Climate Change Response Act 2002.

**Habitat<sup>11</sup>** means the place or type of site where an organism or population naturally occurs.

**Hapu\*\*<sup>12</sup>** means sub-tribe, usually a number of whanau (families) with a common ancestor.

**Hazardous substance\*** includes but is not limited to any substance defined in section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996 as a hazardous substance.

**Historic heritage\***

- (a) means those natural and physical resources that contribute to an understanding and appreciation of New Zealand's history and cultures, deriving from any of the following qualities:
  - (i) archaeological;
  - (ii) architectural;
  - (iii) cultural;
  - (iv) historic;
  - (v) scientific;
  - (vi) technological; and
- (b) includes—
  - (i) historic sites, structures, places, and areas;
  - (ii) archaeological sites;
  - (iii) sites of significance to Māori, including wāhi tapu; and
  - (iv) surroundings associated with the natural and physical resources.

**Indigenous\*\*** means native to New Zealand.

**Industry** means the organised action of making goods and services for sale and/or groups or concerns primarily engaged in the same kind of economic activity and shall include, but is not limited to manufacturing industry, processing industry and energy generation industry.

**In-stream values** are those uses or values of rivers and streams that are derived from within the river system itself and include amenity values, cultural and spiritual values of tangata whenua, and values associated with freshwater ecology and recreational, scenic, aesthetic and educational uses.

**Integrated management** means managing (i.e. identifying, prioritising and acting on) the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources as a whole. Integrated management involves three inter-related parts:

- (a) a recognition by management agencies that natural and physical resources exist as parts of complex and inter-connected social and biophysical systems, where effects on one part of a system may affect other parts of the system and that these effects may occur immediately, may be delayed or may be cumulative; and

<sup>11</sup> *United National Convention on Biological Diversity, (1992).*

<sup>12</sup> *Ministry for the Environment (1991): Consultation with tangata whenua. Ministry for the Environment, Wellington.*

- (b) the integration of management systems between agencies so that the various roles and responsibilities of those agencies are clearly identified and combined or co-ordinated to achieve consistency of purpose; and
- (c) the integration of management systems within agencies to ensure that other legislative or administrative actions are consistent with promoting sustainable management of natural and physical resources.

**Intrinsic values\*** in relation to ecosystems, means those aspects of ecosystems and their constituent parts which have value in their own right, including –

- (a) their biological and genetic diversity; and
- (b) the essential characteristics that determine an ecosystem’s integrity, form, functioning, and resilience.

**Issue** means a matter of concern to the region’s community regarding activities affecting some aspect of natural and physical resources and the environment of the region or their management. These matters are addressed in the Regional Policy Statement as either:

- (a) significant resource management issues of the region; or
- (b) resource management issues of significance to iwi; or
- (c) issues which cross local authority boundaries; or
- (d) matters where jurisdiction and delineation of responsibilities need to be made clear.

**Iwi** means tribe or grouping of Māori people descended from a common ancestor(s).

**Iwi authority\*** means the authority which represents an iwi and which is recognised by that iwi as having authority to do so.

**Iwi o Taranaki** refers to iwi whose rohe fall either wholly or partially within the Taranaki region.

**Kaitiakitanga\*** means the exercise of guardianship by the tangata whenua of an area in accordance with tikanga Māori in relation to natural and physical resources; and includes the ethic of stewardship.

**Kaimoana** means seafood.

**Kaumātua housing** refers to housing for Māori elders.

**Kawanatanga**<sup>13</sup> means governorship, government.

**Lake\*** means a body of fresh water which is entirely or nearly surrounded by land.

**Land\*** includes land covered by water and the air space above land.

**Land drainage** means the act of taking off or diverting excess water from the land by artificial channels, pipes or other means.

**Large-scale urban land use change** means a proposed land use with an area of 5 hectares or more requiring the subject land to be rezoned to urban or an equivalent zoning classification.

**Lifeline utilities** means an entity named or described in Part A of Schedule 1, or that carries on a business described in Part B of Schedule 1 of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002.

**Local authority\*** means a regional council or territorial authority.

**Mātaitai\*** means food resources from the sea and **Mahinga mātaitai** means the areas from which these resources are gathered.

**Mahinga kai** means areas from which food resources are gathered and/or propagated.

**Mana taiao** means customary authority and title exercised by iwi or hapu over the general environment within tribal rohe.

---

<sup>13</sup> *Parliamentary Commissioner for the Environment (1992): Proposed Guidelines for local authority consultation with tangata whenua. Parliamentary Commissioner for the Environment, Wellington.*

**Mana whenua** means customary authority and title exercised by an iwi or hapu in an identified area.

**Mauri/Mouri** means essential life force or principle, a metaphysical quality inherent in all things, both animate and inanimate.

**Method of implementation** means a specific action, procedure, programme or technique adopted to carry out a policy.

**Mineral<sup>14</sup>** means naturally occurring inorganic substance beneath or at the surface of the earth, whether or not under water; and includes all metallic minerals, non-metallic minerals, fuel minerals, precious stones, industrial rocks and building stones and a prescribed substance within the meaning of the Atomic Energy Act 1945.

**Mouth\*** for the purpose of defining the landward boundary of the coastal marine area, means the mouth of a river either:

- (a) as agreed and set between the Minister of Conservation, the regional council, and the appropriate territorial authority in the period between consultation on, and notification of, the proposed regional coastal plan; or
  - (b) as declared by the Environment Court under section 310 upon application made by the Minister of Conservation, the regional council, or the territorial authority prior to the plan becoming operative, –
- and once so agreed and set or declared shall not be changed in accordance with Schedule 1 or otherwise varied, altered, questioned, or reviewed in any way until the next review of the regional coastal plan, unless the Minister of Conservation, the regional council, and the appropriate territorial authority agree.

**National policy statement\*** means a statement issued under Section 52 of the Act.

**Natural and physical resources\*** includes land, water, air, soil, minerals, and energy, all forms of plants and animals (whether native to New Zealand or introduced), and all structures.

**Natural hazard\*** means any atmospheric or earth or water related occurrence (including earthquake, tsunami, erosion, volcanic and geothermal activity, landslip, subsidence, sedimentation, wind, drought, fire or flooding) the action of which adversely affects or may adversely affect human life, property or other aspects of the environment.

**Network utility** means any activity that a network utility operator would be authorised to carry out under section 166 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

**New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement\*** means a statement issued under section 57 of the Act.

**Noa** means free from tapu, profane or ordinary.

**Objective** means a statement of desired outcome intended to achieve sustainable management of the environment. An objective should be achievable and when possible or appropriate measurable and time specific.

**Papakāinga** is a general term for Māori housing complexes on Māori land and marae.

**Pastoral lands** means those lands where livestock grazing is the principal activity and where pasture is the predominant vegetation cover (where trees or other vegetation may also be present but as a minor component) and also includes those pastoral lands at various stages of reverting to their original indigenous forest cover but which cannot be classed as indigenous forest land. In the latter case, vegetation may include recent regrowth in the form of fern, bracken or weed plants. In the context of this Regional Policy Statement, 'pastoral lands' are also taken to include land use for horticulture and cropping.

**Plan\*** means a regional plan or district plan.

**Policy** means a specific statement that guides or directs decision-making. A policy indicates a commitment to a general course of action in working towards an objective.

**Primary production** means the use and development of land for the production of primary products including agricultural, horticultural, pastoral and forestry products, and intensive pig and poultry farming.

---

<sup>14</sup> Section 2(1) of the Crown Minerals Act.

**Reasonable** means that which is reasonable as determined or resolved by the Taranaki Regional Council or its officers acting under delegated authority under Section 34 of the Act.

**Recognised** means that which is recognised by the Taranaki Regional Council or its officers under delegated authority under Section 34 of the Act.

**Region\*** means relation to a regional council, the region of the regional council as determined in accordance with the Local Government Act 2002.

**Regional coastal plan\*** means an operative plan approved by the Minister of Conservation under the First Schedule of the Act, and includes all operative changes to such a plan (whether arising from a review or otherwise).

**Regional council\*** has the same meaning as in the Local Government Act 2002.

**Regional plan\*** means an operative plan (including a regional coastal plan) approved by a regional council or the Minister of Conservation under the Schedule 1; and includes all operative changes to such a plan (whether arising from a review or otherwise).

**Regional policy statement\*** means an operative regional policy statement approved by a regional council under Schedule 1 and includes all operative changes to such a policy statement (whether arising from a review or otherwise).

**Regional rule\*** means a rule made as part of a regional plan or proposed regional plan in accordance with section 68 and section 77A of the Act.

**Regional significance** means one or more of the following:

- (a) matters which are of widespread public concern or interest throughout the region regarding actual or potential effects on the environment;
- (b) values associated with natural and physical resources or any structure, place, feature or area which are greater than local significance, or which are rare or unique within the region;
- (c) the existence of significant cross boundary issues where resources or effects cross administrative boundaries and where coordination or integration of policies, actions or decision-making is required;
- (d) matters or effects considered by tangata whenua to be of greater than local significance;
- (e) any significant use or development of the region's stock of natural and physical resources;
- (f) cumulative effects of regional significance.

**Riparian management** means the collection of activities and practices that can be applied to the riparian margin in order to improve the natural characteristics and functioning of the whole riparian zone (which includes the waterway itself as well as the riparian margins).

**Riparian margin** means a strip of land of varying width adjacent to a waterway and which contributes or may contribute to the maintenance and enhancement of the natural functioning, quality and character of the waterway and its margins.

**River\*** means a continually or intermittently flowing body of fresh water, and includes a stream and modified watercourse; but does not include any artificial watercourse (including an irrigation canal, water supply race, canal for the supply of water for electricity power generation, and farm drainage canal).

**Rohe**<sup>15</sup> means the territory or boundary, which defines the area within which a tangata whenua group claims traditional association and mana whenua.

**Rule\*** means a district rule or regional rule.

**Soil**<sup>16</sup> means the earth or ground but specifically the loose material of the earth's surface in which terrestrial plants grow, usually formed from weathered rock or regolith changed by chemical, physical and biological processes and ... may be considered as an entity quite apart from the rocks below it.

---

<sup>15</sup> *Parliamentary Commissioner for the Environment, (1992), op. cit.*

<sup>16</sup> *Clarke, A N (1990) Dictionary of Geography. Penguin Group. London.*

**Soil conservation\*** means avoiding, remedying, or mitigating soil erosion and maintaining the physical, chemical, and biological qualities of soil.

**Soil disturbance** refers to the disturbance of soil by human induced activities, including earthworks associated with roading and tracking, formation of skid or landing sites, subdivision, pipeline trenching and land contouring, but does not include land disturbed for cultivation, cropping, and harvesting (including logging).

**Soil erosion**<sup>17</sup> means the removal of soil by erosion.

**Solid waste** means primarily solid contaminants for which disposal by discharge into the environment is intended, or for which disposal by discharge into the environment would be necessary if other processes such as re-use or recovery cannot be applied.

**Structure\*** means any building, equipment, device, or other facility made by people and which is fixed to land and includes any raft.

**Structure/concept plan** means a framework to guide the development or redevelopment of a particular area by defining the future development and land use patterns, the layout and nature of network and community infrastructure and open space, and other key features for managing the effects of development. Features that may be represented in, and managed through, a structure/concept plan, include:

- the type and location of land uses that will be provided for, including development type, density/intensity, structure, and staging development to support and coordinate with the provision and funding of infrastructure,
- multi-modal transport links and connectivity
- the location, type, scale, staging, and funding of network and community infrastructure and open space required to service an area
- landscape character and amenity
- urban design
- natural hazards
- the protection of sites, features or values (cultural, ecological, historical or amenity related)
- areas of contamination and the rehabilitation standards required.

**Sufficient** means that which is sufficient as determined by the Taranaki Regional Council or relevant territorial authority or their officers acting under delegated authority.

**Surface water** means water in a river, lake, stream, pond or wetland.

**Sustainable management\*** means managing the use, development, and protection of natural and physical resources in a way, or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural well-being and for their health and safety while:

- (a) sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources (excluding minerals) to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations;
- (b) safeguarding the life-supporting capacity of air, water, soil, and ecosystems; and
- (c) avoiding, remedying, or mitigating any adverse effects of activities on the environment.

**Sustainable yield** refers to the quantity and quality aspects of groundwater and is the quantity of groundwater that can be abstracted from an aquifer for a prolonged period without depleting the resource or causing other adverse effects on groundwater quality or groundwater users.

**Taiao** means the natural world or environment.

**Tangata whenua\*** in relation to a particular area, means the iwi, or hapu, that holds mana whenua over that area.

**Taonga**<sup>18</sup> means treasure, property: taonga are prized and protected as sacred possessions of the tribe. The term carries a deep spiritual meaning and taonga may be things that cannot be seen or touched. Included for example are te reo Māori (the Māori language), wāhi tapu, waterways, fishing grounds and mountains.

**Taonga raranga\*** means plants which produce material highly prized for use in weaving.

---

<sup>17</sup> Clarke, A N, (1990), *op. cit.*

<sup>18</sup> Parliamentary Commissioner for the Environment, (1991), *op. cit.*

**Tapu** means under spiritual protection or restriction.

**Taranaki tangata** refers to the tangata whenua of the Taranaki region.

**Tangata waka\*** means canoe landing or launching sites.

**Territorial authority** means a city council or a district council.

**Territorial sea\*** means the territorial sea of New Zealand defined by Section 3 of the Territorial Sea and Exclusive Economic Zone Act 1977.

**Tikanga Māori \*** means Māori customary values and practices.

**Tino rangatiratanga<sup>19</sup>** means chiefly authority, chieftainship, full tribal authority and refers to tribal self-management – to manage and control in accordance with the preferences of the owner.

**Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi)\*** has the same meaning and the word ‘treaty’ as defined in Section 2 of the Treaty of Waitangi Act 1975 (refer to Appendix III of this Regional Policy Statement for both English and Māori versions of the Treaty as contained in the Treaty of Waitangi Act 1975).

**Tūrangawaewae** means domicile, home or home turf.

**Vegetation disturbance**, for the purposes of this Regional Policy Statement, means the cutting, burning, clearing or destruction (including chemical destruction) of vegetation but excluding grazing, agricultural and horticultural cropping, the cutting of grass, the destruction of pest plants, and forest pruning, tinning and layering.

**Wāhi tapu** means places or things, which are sacred or spiritually endowed.

**Wairua** means attitude, mood, spirit or soul.

**Water\***

- (a) means water in all its physical forms whether flowing or not and whether over or under the ground;
- (b) includes fresh water, coastal water, and geothermal water; and
- (c) does not include water in any form while in any pipe, tank, or cistern.

**Water body\*** means fresh water or geothermal water in a river, lake, stream, pond, or aquifer, or any part thereof, that is not located within the coastal marine area.

**Wetland\*** includes permanently or intermittently wet areas, shallow water, and land water margins that support a natural ecosystem of plants and animals that are adapted to wet conditions.

**Whare wānanga** means university or school of higher learning.

---

<sup>19</sup> *Parliamentary Commissioner for the Environment, (1991), op cit.*

